

DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES

**Seventeenth Meeting  
of the  
SECRETARY'S ADVISORY COMMITTEE  
ON  
GENETICS, HEALTH, AND SOCIETY  
(SACGHS)**

+ + +

**Monday  
December 1, 2008**

**– VOLUME I –**

+ + +

Hubert H. Humphrey Building  
200 Independence Ave., SW  
Washington, DC

## PARTICIPANTS:

## Committee Members

Committee Chair**Steven Teutsch, M.D., M.P.H.**

Executive Director  
Outcomes Research and Management  
Merck & Company, Inc.

**Mara Aspinall, M.B.A.**

Senior Advisor  
Genzyme Corporation

**Sylvia Mann Au, M.S., C.G.C.**

Hawaii State Genetics Coordinator  
Genetics Program  
Hawaii Department of Health

**Paul Billings, M.D., Ph.D., F.A.C.P., F.A.C.M.G.**

(Appointment Pending) [by telephone]  
President and Chief Executive Officer  
CELLective Dx  
Chairman  
Signature Genomics Laboratories, LLC

**Rochelle Dreyfuss, M.A., J.D.**

Pauline Newman Professor of Law  
New York University School of Law

**James P. Evans, M.D., Ph.D.**

Professor of Genetics and Medicine  
Director of Clinical Cancer Genetics and the  
Bryson Program in Human Genetics  
Departments of Medicine and Genetics  
University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill

**Andrea Ferreira-Gonzalez, Ph.D.**

Professor of Pathology  
Director, Molecular Diagnostics Laboratory  
Virginia Commonwealth University

**Kevin T. FitzGerald, S.J., Ph.D., Ph.D.**

Dr. David P. Laufer Chair in Catholic Health Care Ethics  
Research Associate Professor  
Department of Oncology  
Georgetown University Medical Center

**PARTICIPANTS** *(continued)*:**Julio Licinio, M.D.**

Professor and Chairman  
Miller School of Medicine  
University of Miami  
Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences

**Barbara Burns McGrath, R.N., Ph.D.**

Research Associate Professor  
University of Washington School of Nursing

**Paul Steven Miller, J.D.**

Director, UW Disability Studies Program  
Henry M. Jackson Professor of Law  
University of Washington School of Law

**Joseph Telfair, Dr.P.H., M.S.W., M.P.H.**

Professor  
Public Health Research and Practice  
Department of Public Health Education  
University of North Carolina at Greensboro

**Marc S. Williams, M.D., FAAP, FACMG**

Director  
InterMountain Healthcare  
Clinical Genetics Institute

**Paul Wise, M.D., M.P.H.**

Richard E. Behrman Professor of Child Health and Society  
Stanford University

**Ex Officios****Department of Commerce****Michael Amos, Ph.D.**

Scientific Advisor  
Chemical Science and Technology Laboratory  
National Institute of Standards and Technology

**Department of Defense****COL. Scott D. McLean, MC, USA**

Chief of Medical Genetics  
San Antonio Military Medical Centers  
Clinical Genetics Consultant to the Army Surgeon General

PARTICIPANTS *(continued)*:**Department of Energy****Dan Drell, Ph.D.**

Biologist, Life Sciences Division  
Office of Biological and Environmental Research  
Department of Energy

**Department of Health and Human Services****Michael A. Carome, M.D.**

Associate Director for Regulatory Affairs  
Office for Human Research Protections  
Office of Public Health and Science (Acting Ex Officio)

**Robinsue Frohboese, J.D., Ph.D. [Not Present]**

Principal Deputy Director  
Office for Civil Rights

**Denise Geolot, Ph.D., R.N.**

Director  
Center for Quality  
Health Resources and Services Administration

**Steven Gutman, M.D., M.B.A.**

Director  
Office for In Vitro Diagnostic Device Evaluation and Safety  
Food and Drug Administration

**Alan E. Guttmacher, M.D.**

Acting Director  
National Human Genome Research Institute  
National Institutes of Health

**Charles N.W. Keckler, M.A., J.D.**

Deputy Assistant Secretary for Policy and External Affairs  
Administration for Children and Families

**Muin J. Khoury, M.D., Ph.D.**

Director  
National Office of Public Health Genomics  
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention

**Gurvaneet Randhawa, M.D., MPH**

Medical Officer  
Center for Outcomes and Evidence (COE)  
Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality

**PARTICIPANTS** *(continued)*:**Barry M. Straube, M.D.**

Chief Medical Officer  
Office of Clinical Standards and Quality  
Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services

**Department of Labor****Thomas Alexander, J.D.**

Chief of Staff  
Employee Benefits Security Administration  
U.S. Department of Labor

**Department of Veterans Affairs****Douglas Olsen**, on behalf of Ellen Fox, M.D.

Senior Nurse Ethicist  
National Center for Ethics in Health Care  
Department of Veterans Affairs

**Equal Employment Opportunity Commission****Naomi Earp, J.D.**

Chair  
Equal Employment Opportunity Commission

**Federal Trade Commission****Matthew Daynard, J.D.** [Not Present]

Senior Attorney  
Bureau of Consumer Protection  
Division of Advertising Practices  
Federal Trade Commission

SACGHS Staff

**Executive Secretary****Sarah Carr**

NIH Office of Biotechnology Activities

**Cathy Fomous, Ph.D.**

Senior Health Policy Analyst  
NIH Office of Biotechnology Activities

**Yvette Seger, Ph.D.**

Senior Health Policy Analyst  
NIH Office of Biotechnology Activities

**Kathi Hanna**

PARTICIPANTS *(continued)*:

## Speakers

**James P. Evans, M.D., Ph.D.**

Chair

SACGHS Task Force on Gene Patents and Licensing Practices

**Willie May, Ph.D.**

Director

Chemical Science and Technology Laboratory (CSTL)

National Institute of Standards and Technology

**John Butler, Ph.D.**

Biochemical Science Division

Chemical Science and Technology Laboratory

National Institute of Standards and Technology

**David Bunk, Ph.D.**

Analytical Chemistry Division

Chemical Science and Technology Laboratory

National Institute of Standards and Technology

**Karen Phinney, Ph.D.**

Analytical Chemistry Division

Chemical Science and Technology Laboratory

National Institute of Standards and Technology

**Steven Gutman, M.D., M.B.A.**

Director

Office for In Vitro Diagnostic Device Evaluation and Safety

Food and Drug Administration

**Jeff Cossman, M.D.**

Chief Scientific Officer

Critical Path Institute

**Michael Amos, Ph.D.**

Scientific Advisor

Chemical Science and Technology Laboratory

National Institute of Standards and Technology

## CONTENTS

	<u>Page No.</u>
<b>Opening Remarks</b>	
Steven Teutsch, M.D., M.P.H. ....	9
 <b><i>SESSION ON GENE PATENTS AND LICENSING PRACTICES</i></b>	
<b>Review of SACGHS Public Consultation Draft Report: Gene Patents and Licensing Practices and Their Impact on Patient Access to Genetic Tests</b>	
James P. Evans, M.D., Ph.D. ....	24
 <b>Public Comments</b>	
Michael Watson, Ph.D. ....	200
Debra Leonard, M.D., Ph.D. ....	206
Guido Brink ....	210
Carol Reed ....	212
 <b>Continued Discussion and Consensus on Releasing Public Consultation Draft Report for Public Comment</b> .....	216
 <b><i>SESSION ON STANDARDS DEVELOPMENT INITIATIVES TO ENHANCE OVERSIGHT AND ADVANCE INNOVATION OF GENETIC TECHNOLOGIES</i></b>	
<b>Overview of Session</b>	
Steven Teutsch, M.D., M.P.H. ....	306
 <b>Initiatives of the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) in Clinical Diagnostics Standards Development</b>	
Willie May, Ph.D. ....	310
 <b>Question-and-Answer Session</b> .....	324
 <b><u>Standards Development for New Technologies</u></b>	
<b><u>Nucleic Acid Tests</u></b>	
John Butler, Ph.D. ....	330
 <b><u>Proteomic Tests</u></b>	
David Bunk, Ph.D. ....	342
 <b><u>Metabolomic Tests</u></b>	
Karen Phinney, Ph.D. ....	353
 <b><u>Standards Development Challenges Facing Stakeholders</u></b>	
<b><u>Regulatory Agency Perspective</u></b>	
Steven Gutman, M.D., M.B.A. ....	363
 <b><u>Clinical Perspective</u></b>	
Jeff Cossman, M.D. ....	369

CONTENTS *(continued)*

	<u>Page No.</u>
<b>Question-and-Answer Session</b> .....	380
<b>Future Directions in Clinical Diagnostic Standards Development</b>	
Michael Amos, Ph.D. ....	385
<b>Discussion</b> .....	395
<b>Closing Remarks</b>	
Steven Teutsch, M.D., M.P.H. ....	403
<b>Adjournment</b> .....	406

## 1 PROCEEDINGS

2 [8:06 a.m.]

## 3 Opening Remarks

4 **Steven Teutsch, M.D., M.P.H.**

5 DR. TEUTSCH: Good morning, everyone.

6 Thanks to all of you who fought the traffic and dealt  
7 with the airlines and the weather and assorted other  
8 travails of travel yesterday. Hopefully you had a  
9 great Thanksgiving. I appreciate everyone taking the  
10 end of their weekend to get here and be with us.

11 This is the 17th meeting of the Secretary's  
12 Advisory Committee on Genetics, Health, and Society.  
13 Just as a matter of record, the public was made aware  
14 of this meeting through notices in the Federal  
15 Register as well as announcements on the SACGHS  
16 website and listserv. I want to welcome members of  
17 the public in attendance as well as viewers tuned in  
18 via webcast. Thanks so much for your interest in our  
19 work.

20 Please note that we have scheduled public  
21 comment sessions for this afternoon at 1 o'clock and  
22 again tomorrow morning at 10:15. We have several of

1 you already registered to make comments, but there is  
2 room for others of you to do so. If you would like to  
3 make comments, please sign up at the registration desk  
4 just outside of the meeting hall so that we can get  
5 you on the list.

6           We have an interesting agenda. There are  
7 four main goals for this meeting. First, we are going  
8 to be reviewing a draft report that explores the  
9 question of whether gene patenting and licensing  
10 practices are having effects on patient access to  
11 genetic tests and determining whether the report is  
12 ready to be released for public comment.

13           Later today, as a follow-up to some of the  
14 issues discussed in our Oversight Report, we will take  
15 an in-depth look at some of the important federal  
16 initiatives to enhance quality and innovation of  
17 genetic technologies through standards development.  
18 Tomorrow we are going to continue to discuss and  
19 refine our future study priorities and plans.  
20 Finally, we will also discuss a draft progress report  
21 for the new administration.

22           At our last meeting, which was in July, in

1 addition to preparing a progress report for the  
2 incoming Secretary, we decided to write a letter to  
3 Secretary Leavitt. We sketched out the main points of  
4 the letter during our meeting and finalized the text  
5 via Email after the meeting.

6 In addition to thanking the Secretary for  
7 the high priority he has given to effecting innovative  
8 policy strategies that harness public and private  
9 sector solutions and resources to address the policy  
10 challenges associated with the development of genetic  
11 technologies, we also took the opportunity to  
12 highlight several issues that we thought were in need  
13 of critical attention over the remainder of his  
14 tenure.

15 We urged the Secretary to move forward on  
16 one of our oversight recommendations by beginning to  
17 address the practical and legal questions surrounding  
18 the establishment of a national registry of laboratory  
19 tests, and taking steps to create incentives for  
20 laboratories to make their test menus and analytical  
21 and clinical validity data for these tests publicly  
22 available through gene tests, or at least post them on

1 their own websites.

2           In the area of pharmacogenomics, we  
3 highlighted the importance of the FDA issuing draft  
4 guidance on the co-development of pharmacogenomic  
5 drugs and diagnostics. We also reiterated the need  
6 for changes in Medicare coverage and billing policies  
7 to facilitate the integration of genetic technologies  
8 based on family history of disease and to enhance  
9 patient access to genetic counseling services.

10           A hard copy of that letter is in Tab 7 of  
11 your briefing books. We have also made it available  
12 to those in attendance, as well as to the public  
13 generally through our website.

14           With regard to the FDA co-development  
15 guidance for pharmacogenomic drugs and diagnostics, we  
16 understand that there have been a series of meetings  
17 over the fall on the guidance and that work continues  
18 on that.

19           With regard to the other issues we have  
20 raised regarding coverage and reimbursement, I'm told  
21 we can expect to receive a letter from the Secretary  
22 addressing some of those issues as well.

1           I also want to take note of the report,  
2 which you see here on the screen, that Secretary  
3 Leavitt released about two weeks ago to provide an  
4 update on HHS efforts to advance personalized health  
5 care. The report discusses many of the issues that we  
6 have been addressing as a committee. It outlines some  
7 of the important steps that have been taken to advance  
8 personalized medicine, but also offers a frank account  
9 of how much more will need to be done before  
10 personalized health care is a fully developed and  
11 fully applied system.

12           The report contains case studies and  
13 commissioned papers that are very relevant to a number  
14 of the issues that we are likely to take up in the  
15 years ahead. It is available on the HHS website at  
16 the URL that you see on the screen. Those of you who  
17 are on the Committee should have received copies of  
18 that as well.

19           We have also seen significant progress on  
20 the family history front. A demonstration of the  
21 Secretary General's Family History Tool was shown on  
22 November 25th. Marc Williams was there and can regale

1 us with stories of that. It is to be released in late  
2 December.

3           Several agencies -- CDC, HRSA, and AHRQ --  
4 are supporting research and development through  
5 contracts and cooperative agreements to enhance the  
6 utility of family history in electronic health  
7 information to support risk assessment and prevention.

8           At our last meeting we not only acknowledged  
9 but we celebrated the signing of GINA, the Genetic  
10 Information Nondiscrimination Act, of 2008. The  
11 provisions of the Act do not take effect until next  
12 year. There is a great deal of focus on the  
13 implementing regulations that need to be developed.  
14 Rulemaking processes are underway throughout HHS and  
15 the Departments of Labor and Treasury and the EEOC.

16           We understand that a proposed rule will be  
17 issued soon by the EEOC on the employment provisions  
18 of the law. There are multiple teams working across  
19 the agencies on the health insurance provisions. The  
20 health insurance provisions take effect in May of  
21 2009. The employer provisions start in November of  
22 2009.

1           Guidance is also being developed for  
2 researchers and research oversight agencies. These  
3 are in clearance and we expect them before year's end.

4           I would also like to note that since our  
5 last meeting the work of the SACGHS Genetics Education  
6 and Training Task Force has proceeded under the  
7 dedicated leadership of Dr. Barbara Burns McGrath.  
8 The task force has formed three workgroups to examine  
9 the educational needs of healthcare professionals,  
10 public health providers, patients, and consumers.  
11 They are currently in a data-collecting phase and plan  
12 to begin drafting the report in February.

13           As part of this effort I would like to alert  
14 our ex officio representatives that they will receive  
15 a survey later this month from the task force. The  
16 survey will inquire about genetics education  
17 activities within your agencies. I hope you or your  
18 colleagues will take time to complete the survey,  
19 which should be returned by the end of January.

20           Also, during the course of information  
21 gathering, the task force learned that the Council on  
22 Linkages Between Academia and Public Health Practice

1 was revising its core competencies for public health  
2 practitioners and academicians. Since competency in  
3 genetics is not currently addressed, the task force  
4 would like SACGHS to submit a competency that  
5 emphasizes the importance of understanding genetics  
6 and genomics as they relate broadly to public health.

7           The proposed comments are the first item  
8 under Tab 7. The council is accepting comments until  
9 December 15th. We would like you to review the  
10 proposal over the next two days and let Cathy Fomous  
11 know if you have any suggested edits.

12           In particular, I want to thank Sylvia Au and  
13 Joseph Telfair for really spearheading this and making  
14 sure that this gets in here. Thanks to you both.

15           Tomorrow we will be delving back into our  
16 discussion of future study priorities. You will  
17 recall that in July we came to preliminary conclusions  
18 about the issue areas that we thought needed to be  
19 pursued. Our goal at this meeting will be to come to  
20 a final consensus on the issues and agree on a work  
21 plan for addressing them. As we do this, we will be  
22 mindful of the need to factor the priorities of the

1 new administration into our ultimate work plan.

2           To this end, we will also be discussing a  
3 draft report to the new administration. In July we  
4 agreed that this report should take the form of a  
5 concise summary and that it should discuss the growing  
6 importance of personalized medicine and the complex  
7 issues it raises. It should sum up our work and key  
8 recommendations over the past six years and outline  
9 the issues that will need attention going forward.

10           The report should also serve as a vehicle  
11 for ascertaining how we can be most helpful to the new  
12 Secretary and make clear that we are ready to adjust  
13 our priorities as needed.

14           We are in a time of transition in more ways  
15 than one. This will be the last SACGHS meeting for  
16 several of our ex officio members: Scott McLean, Matt  
17 Daynard, who will be joining us tomorrow, and Steve  
18 Gutman, who will be retiring from federal service at  
19 the end of the year.

20           Let me say we deeply appreciate your service  
21 on this Committee and your many contributions to our  
22 work. We have admired your commitment to public and

1 military service and your dedication to fulfilling  
2 your agencies' important missions.

3           Steve, I know you were involved in SACGHS's  
4 predecessor, the Secretary's Advisory Committee on  
5 Genetic Testing. All told, you are probably among the  
6 longest-serving ex officios. For that you deserve  
7 special recognition and an extra measure of our regard  
8 and appreciation.

9           To all of you, we wish you the best in all  
10 your new endeavors.

11           [Applause.]

12           DR. TEUTSCH: We know that FDA and DOD will  
13 be appointing new ex officios, and we will look  
14 forward to seeing those new faces and working with  
15 them.

16           Matt Daynard's replacement at the FTC will  
17 be Sarah Botha, an attorney in the Division of  
18 Advertising Practices. She should be here tomorrow  
19 and we will meet her then.

20           I also want to take this opportunity to  
21 thank Joe Boone, who I don't believe is here, and who  
22 is the associate director for science in the Division

1 of Laboratory Systems at CDC, for his contributions to  
2 SACGHS and SACGT over these last 10 years. Joe is  
3 also retiring at the end of the year. I have known  
4 Joe since my CDC days, so I have known him for about  
5 30 years.

6           There has also been a transition at the  
7 EEOC. Peter Gray, who served as Commissioner Earp's  
8 alternate for a number of years, has moved to the  
9 Civil Rights Division of the Department of Justice.  
10 We have appreciated Peter's dedication very much and  
11 know that before he left EEOC he was working on the  
12 development of the regs implementing the employment  
13 provisions of GINA.

14           EEOC will now be represented at the staff  
15 level by Kerry Leibig, a senior attorney advisor in  
16 the EEOC's Office of Legal Counsel. Kerry will be  
17 joining us tomorrow as well. We welcome her to the  
18 SACGHS.

19           Thanks to all of you for your service and  
20 advice.

21           I also want to welcome Dr. Doug Olsen, a  
22 senior nurse ethicist at the National Center for

1 Ethics and Health Care at the VA. He is serving as  
2 the alternate ex officio today. Dr. Fox will be here  
3 tomorrow.

4           We have a new member of SACGHS to welcome.  
5 Darren Greninger joined the team in August and was put  
6 to immediate work. He has an undergraduate degree in  
7 biology and a law degree, and has worked as a science  
8 writer and journalist. Welcome, Darren. I'm glad to  
9 see that all the work didn't dissuade you from coming.

10           I also have a personal transition. This is  
11 my first day of retirement from Merck. I am leaving  
12 the private sector and will be rejoining the public  
13 health community as chief science officer at the L.A.  
14 County Health Department, so I will be here in a  
15 different capacity.

16           I would also like to call your attention to  
17 the fact that, like all federal advisory committees,  
18 SACGHS has a two-year charter. In September our  
19 charter was extended for another two years, so that is  
20 good news.

21           We also wanted to point out that SACGHS has  
22 a new Web address and a new site. You will see on the

1 screen the new URL, which is shown here. There is  
2 also a handout at the registration desk. Hopefully we  
3 will find people finding our materials even more  
4 accessible than they have been up until now.

5 Sarah, this is the time that we all know and  
6 love when we get together, the important reminder  
7 about the ethics rules, which are clearly important.

8 MS. CARR: Very important. As you know, you  
9 have been appointed to this Committee as a special  
10 government employee. Although you are in this special  
11 category, you are nonetheless subject to the rules of  
12 conduct that apply to regular government employees.  
13 I'm going to highlight two of those rules today: the  
14 rule about conflicts of interest and the rule about  
15 lobbying.

16 First, conflicts of interest. Before every  
17 meeting you provide us with information about your  
18 personal, professional, and financial interests, which  
19 is information that we use to determine whether you  
20 have any real, potential, or apparent conflicts of  
21 interest that could compromise your ability to be  
22 objective in giving advice during Committee meetings.

1           While we waive conflicts of interest for  
2 general matters because we believe your ability to be  
3 objective will not be affected by your interests in  
4 such matters, we also rely to a great degree on you to  
5 be attentive during our meetings to the possibility  
6 that an issue will arise that could affect or appear  
7 to affect your interests in a specific way.

8           In addition, we have provided each of you  
9 with a list of your financial interests and covered  
10 relationships that would pose a conflict for you if  
11 they became a focal point of Committee deliberations.

12    If this happens, we ask you to recuse yourself from  
13 the discussion and leave the room.

14           Government employees are prohibited from  
15 lobbying and thus we may not lobby, not as individuals  
16 or as a Committee. If you lobby in your professional  
17 capacity or as a private citizen, it is important that  
18 you keep that activity separate from activities  
19 associated with this Committee. Just keep in mind  
20 that SACGHS is an advisory committee to the Secretary  
21 of Health and Human Services. It does not advise the  
22 Congress.

1           As always, I thank you for being attentive  
2 to these rules of conduct. We appreciate how  
3 conscientious you all are. Thank you.

4           DR. TEUTSCH: Thank you, Sarah. We do need  
5 to keep all of that in mind, of course. I think it is  
6 important to recognize also that since we do serve in  
7 multiple capacities, things where your names appear  
8 with SACGHS all should really be reviewed by the  
9 Committee.

10           Sarah, thank you. With that important  
11 reminder, we are ready to get started on our first  
12 agenda item.

13           As I think all of you are more than a little  
14 aware, the SACGHS Task Force on Gene Patents and  
15 Licensing Practices has been working for more than two  
16 years to carry out a study of the very important and  
17 largely unexplored question of whether gene patents  
18 and licensing practices affect patient access to  
19 genetic tests.

20           The task force began under the leadership of  
21 Dr. Deb Leonard, who has continued to serve as an ad  
22 hoc member of the group and joins us today in that

1 capacity. Deb, thanks for your continuing service on  
2 the task force. Welcome back, as always.

3           Into the breach stepped one Jim Evans, on my  
4 right, assuming the role of chair at the conclusion of  
5 Deb's term. He has been ably guiding the task force's  
6 work ever since.

7           We have reached an important milestone in  
8 our work on this topic. Our goal for today is to  
9 decide whether the draft report that the task force  
10 has developed is ready to be released for public  
11 comment. The draft report is in Tab 3 of the briefing  
12 book.

13           In addition to the preliminary findings and  
14 conclusions, the task force has developed a range of  
15 potential policy options for public consideration.  
16 Jim will review the key elements of those and then  
17 facilitate a discussion of the draft report and policy  
18 options.

19           It should be apparent that the task force  
20 has devoted countless hours to this project. I want  
21 to commend all of the members of the task force, and  
22 most specifically Jim, for his energy, dedication,

1 leadership, and commitment to all of this. Jim,  
2 thanks very much. Take it away.

3 **SESSION ON GENE PATENTS AND LICENSING PRACTICES**

4 **Review of SACGHS Draft Report:**

5 **Gene Patents and Licensing Practices**

6 **and Their Impact on Patient Access to Genetic Tests**

7 **James P. Evans, M.D., Ph.D.**

8 [PowerPoint presentation.]

9 DR. EVANS: Great. It has actually been  
10 quite a while since the full Committee has heard about  
11 our progress on the patents and licensing issues. I  
12 do want to start off by thanking everyone who has been  
13 involved in this. This has turned out to be a  
14 gargantuan task. I think that this is true for a  
15 couple of reasons.

16 One is that it is simply a very broad and  
17 very deep field. There is a huge history of patent  
18 law and licensing issues. Patents obviously go way  
19 back to the U.S. Constitution. So it is technically a  
20 demanding subject. We are very fortunate to have a  
21 broad range of expertise on the task force.

22 I think the other thing that makes it

1 difficult is that there are many stakeholders. The  
2 stakeholders, when it comes to patents and licensing,  
3 are not always in sync with their own interests.  
4 There are sometimes mutually exclusive interests. So  
5 this becomes both a complex issue as well as one that  
6 can become contentious as well.

7           Again, I want to thank the task force for  
8 the many, many hours of conference calls, and some  
9 two-hour conference calls that went into three hours.  
10 I still am apologizing for that.

11           [Laughter.]

12           DR. EVANS: I want to thank Steve for his  
13 guidance in this, because he has been there at  
14 critical junctures as we have come across certain  
15 issues that needed to be hammered out. I want to,  
16 especially, do a huge public thank you to Yvette Seger  
17 and to Sarah Carr, who have been just tireless. None  
18 of this would have happened without them. They are  
19 fantastic.

20           You can see the roster of people who have  
21 been involved in this. What I want to do today is  
22 march through these -- again, a time for apologies --

1 130 slides. But we have several hours to do this.

2 [Laughter.]

3 DR. EVANS: We can discuss as we do it. I  
4 even have some humor slides I can show for breaks to  
5 wake you up.

6 I do think it behooves us to review what we  
7 have done and where we started with this as we go  
8 forward. The last couple of hours, what I want to do  
9 is go over this range of policy options.

10 The way we have approached this is a little  
11 bit unusual, but because it is such a complex and,  
12 potentially, a contentious issue, we think that the  
13 way we have tailored this will serve well the public's  
14 interest in having some framework from which to  
15 comment. At our next meeting after that public  
16 comment period, we will try to finalize our  
17 recommendations.

18 So, the history of this. In March of '04,  
19 gene patents and licensing were officially identified  
20 as a SACGHS priority. We deferred further effort at  
21 that point because of the NRC report, which was at  
22 that point in progress and had not come out yet. It

1 subsequently came out, and in the fall of 2005 a small  
2 group was formed to review the NRC report and to  
3 determine whether they had done our work for us and  
4 whether we didn't need to go on, or whether there were  
5 things that it would be well for the SACGHS to take  
6 up.

7           During March of 2006, the NRC's general  
8 thrust was endorsed by this Committee, but there were  
9 some important limitations in our minds. Those had to  
10 do with clinical and patient access.

11           The NRC report was focused primarily on  
12 research. We felt at that time that we needed to  
13 investigate the issue of how gene patents and  
14 licensing play out in the realm of patient care,  
15 something that was not really a focus of the NRC. So  
16 it is not a deficiency of that report, just that that  
17 really wasn't their primary focus.

18           In June of 2006, we had an informational  
19 session. We decided at that point to move forward  
20 with an in-depth study that would focus on gene  
21 patents and licensing as they relate to patient access  
22 to genetic tests. We discussed the study's scope and

1 the work plan at that point, and we established the  
2 Task Force on Gene Patents and Licensing Practices.

3           Then in October of 2006, now two years ago,  
4 we had the first task force meeting, where we refined  
5 the proposed scope of the study and we outlined  
6 potential approaches for the study. Shortly after  
7 that, at the full meeting of SACGHS in November, we  
8 presented the study scope and work plan, which were  
9 approved by the full Committee.

10           In February 2007, there was a task force  
11 meeting to discuss the study scope and work plan. We  
12 had at that time met with Bob Cook-Deegan. I want to  
13 give thanks to him, as well as to the rest of the  
14 members of his team at Duke's Center for Genome  
15 Ethics, Law, and Policy. Bob is a well-respected  
16 leader in this field.

17           His group agreed to develop literature  
18 review and relevant case studies to help us make some  
19 sense and learn what we could in some kind of  
20 systematic, organized way about this broad field so we  
21 could ultimately come to some conclusions that could  
22 lead to recommendations if necessary.

1           In March of '07, we had a special task force  
2 meeting. We had presentations by the Duke CGE and we  
3 discussed next steps.

4           On the very next day, at the SACGHS meeting,  
5 we had a primer session on gene patents and licensing  
6 practices, which I think many of us who only  
7 glancingly had dealt with patents and licensing in the  
8 past, say, through clinical activities, really  
9 benefitted from. It laid out a lot of the  
10 fundamentals, and the nuts and bolts on licensing and  
11 patenting, which can get quite arcane and quite  
12 complex.

13           We received an update from Duke, at that  
14 point, on the status of the literature review and the  
15 case study analyses.

16           Then, in July of '07, at the SACGHS meeting,  
17 we received a briefing on patent reform initiatives in  
18 the 110th Congress. At that time, we also had an  
19 international roundtable. This is not an issue that  
20 is by any means unique to the U.S. The issue of gene  
21 patenting and licensing has been one that has been  
22 very much front and center for many countries. We

1 therefore felt that it would be foolish to ignore the  
2 experience of those other countries.

3           We received, basically, an overview of the  
4 international gene patents and licensing landscape.  
5 We reviewed the status of BRCA testing in Canada and  
6 the U.K., since BRCA has been such a visible and  
7 prominent feature of the gene patent and licensing  
8 landscape.

9           We studied comparisons of the patent system  
10 of the U.S. and several other countries, and we  
11 reviewed international reports and recommendations  
12 regarding these subjects.

13           The purpose of today's session is really  
14 three-fold. One is, we want to review and discuss the  
15 Public Consultation Draft Report on Gene Patents and  
16 Licensing Practices and Their Impact on Patient Access  
17 to Genetic Tests, which is in Tab 3.

18           We also want to review and discuss a range  
19 of policy options for public consideration. Again,  
20 because this is so complex, we did not feel that it  
21 would be fair to the full Committee, to ourselves, or  
22 most importantly, to the public, to at this point

1 settle on concrete recommendations that we felt should  
2 be transmitted to the Secretary. Rather, what we have  
3 done is we have created a range of possible  
4 recommendations.

5           Those are up for discussion today and will  
6 be transmitted, when finalized, to the public. The  
7 public can use those as a framework from which to  
8 comment and make observations.

9           We can then come back armed with those  
10 public comments and settle on final recommendations.  
11 It would have been presumptuous, I think, of the task  
12 force, in this setting, at this point, to have come to  
13 concrete recommendations.

14           We also want to seek the Committee's  
15 approval of this draft report, and we want to decide  
16 on the range of policy options for public  
17 consideration. These would be released for the  
18 standard 60-day public comment period in early 2009.

19           Now, since it has been so long since we have  
20 talked about gene patents and licensing, and because  
21 this is a field with some technical issues that need  
22 to be understood as we go forward, we thought that it

1 would be useful to spend a few minutes reviewing the  
2 background of patents, to some extent, in general, and  
3 obviously specifically, how they relate to genes and  
4 the licensing issues involved.

5           Some of these slides have been taken from  
6 that earlier session in which we received a primer on  
7 gene patents and licensing. I went back and reviewed  
8 the slides of Jorge Goldstein, who was very helpful,  
9 among others, in helping us understand these issues.

10           Why define and protect intellectual  
11 property. If you go back to the Constitution, which  
12 we will take a quote from in a minute, it is really to  
13 promote progress in the sciences and arts. We want to  
14 promote the development of ideas.

15           Intellectual property protection should  
16 really be seen as something whose end is to promote  
17 the creation of additional intellectual property, to  
18 promote its use, et cetera. We want to promote the  
19 investment in ideas. We want to allow and encourage  
20 openness, and discourage secrecy, as a stimulus to  
21 further development.

22           This really crystallized for me as a

1 clinician a few years ago. Those of you who are  
2 clinicians will, I think, understand something that I  
3 had not understood prior to this. In clinical  
4 medicine, we frequently talk about an artery being  
5 patent, being open. It is wide open and the blood can  
6 flow through it. I never understood why "pay-tent"  
7 was spelled in exactly the same way as "pat-tent."

8 [Laughter.]

9 DR. EVANS: It turns out that the whole role  
10 of patents is to keep the field open. So it makes  
11 tremendous sense. That really crystallized for me  
12 what the purpose of patents are. They are to keep the  
13 field open.

14 There is also a philosophical intent behind  
15 intellectual property, and that is to reward  
16 innovation, the idea of natural rights. If somebody  
17 comes up with something, they deserve some degree of  
18 reward for that.

19 The law recognizes a number of distinct  
20 types of intellectual property. One is a trademark,  
21 something like the McDonald's arches or the way "Coca-  
22 Cola" is written in script. That is a trademark, and

1 it serves to communicate to the public what that  
2 product is and foster the advance of that company's  
3 idea.

4 Copyright is the protection of intellectual  
5 material. A song, a book, et cetera, can be under  
6 copyright.

7 Now, one of the things that patents are  
8 specifically designed to circumvent is a third way of  
9 protecting intellectual property, and that is the  
10 trade secret. Trade secrets are a viable way of  
11 protecting one's intellectual property.

12 In fact, the recipe for Coca-Cola is  
13 probably the most famous example of that. They would  
14 have been advised early on by most people, including  
15 most patent attorneys, to go ahead and patent the  
16 recipe for Coca-Cola. It would have given them a  
17 limited-time monopoly on that.

18 They chose to keep it a secret, and many  
19 people would have said at the time, you're not going  
20 to be able to keep it a secret, that it's probably a  
21 bad move because it's hard keeping those secrets.  
22 They have been successful, but many people aren't.

1 Patents are designed, then, to disincentivize, in a  
2 way, the idea of trade secrets.

3           If we go back to the Constitution, I think  
4 it is very important to look at what the Constitution  
5 has to say about why we want patents: "To promote the  
6 progress of science and useful arts by securing for  
7 limited times to authors and inventors the exclusive  
8 right to their respective writings and discoveries."  
9 So, really, it is the granting of a limited-time  
10 monopoly.

11           Again, I would point out that the purpose of  
12 this as expressed in the Constitution is "to promote  
13 the progress of science and useful arts."

14           Patents are really a tradeoff. The  
15 government grants a right of limited duration -- and  
16 typically in this country that is 20 years from filing  
17 -- to prevent others from making, using, selling, or  
18 importing the claimed entity. In return for this  
19 right, the patentee discloses the invention to the  
20 public, and this then presumably fosters further  
21 research and development.

22           To be granted a patent, one has to fulfill

1 certain requirements. That invention has to be  
2 useful. There has to be some defined use for it. It  
3 also has to be novel and it has to be non-obvious. It  
4 has to be new and it has to be non-obvious to somebody  
5 who is "practiced in the art."

6           If we now zero in on the issue of patenting  
7 in biology, specifically patenting human material,  
8 there is a long history of that. It goes back almost  
9 a century. In 1911, adrenaline, or epinephrine, was  
10 patented. The courts ruled that this was a legitimate  
11 application of patent law because adrenaline had been  
12 purified and taken out of its natural environment.  
13 Intellectual expertise had been applied to do that, et  
14 cetera.

15           Insulin was patented in 1923 and  
16 prostaglandins in 1958. In the landmark decision of  
17 Diamond v. Chakrabarty, a bacterium was patented that  
18 had been genetically engineered to eat oil.  
19 Interestingly, that has never been used because of  
20 concerns about the environmental impact of releasing  
21 this bacterium into the environment.

22           Isolated genes and life forms are thus

1 considered compositions of matter by the courts and  
2 are eligible for patenting by the USPTO. Most of the  
3 world, including Europe, China, Japan, Australia, and  
4 the U.S., allow patenting of genes, although there are  
5 significant differences in the threshold for awarding  
6 genetic patents and the criteria that must be met in  
7 different jurisdictions.

8           So, what is the problem? Why is there any  
9 controversy about gene patents? Why did we take this  
10 up? I think there are two reasons. I think that this  
11 is seen by many on both sides of the issue and at all  
12 points in between -- because it is clearly not just a  
13 purely dichotomous issue -- as both a moral and a  
14 practical problem.

15           There are many stakeholders with many  
16 different opinions and many different incentives.  
17 There are the public, patients, clinicians, industry,  
18 researchers in academia, researchers in industry  
19 itself, small innovators, and ethics-based groups.  
20 All of these people and all of these groups have some  
21 vested interest and some positions that relate to  
22 patents and licensing of biological materials and, for

1 our purposes especially, when it comes to genes.

2           These stakeholders have distinct interests.

3    Their interests do overlap to an extent, but  
4 sometimes they are mutually exclusive. For example,  
5 we as individuals comprise the public, so we belong to  
6 more than one group of stakeholders with regard to  
7 this issue. We are all potentially patients and,  
8 unless we die before we get to the hospital, we will  
9 all be patients at some point.

10           Even those with no direct financial stake  
11 have an interest in commercialization if such  
12 commercialization enhances the availability of medical  
13 innovations, in this case, for our purposes, genetic  
14 tests.

15           This is an overview of the types of things  
16 that have been brought up on both sides of this issue,  
17 or both ends of that spectrum. It is a spectrum. It  
18 is not just a wall with two sides. There are many  
19 nuanced positions. People in one camp can agree with  
20 another camp in certain instances and disagree in  
21 others.

22           The perceived problems that are brought up

1 when one begins to talk about gene patents and  
2 licensing are, and we will get into some of these,  
3 moral arguments, inhibition of research, inhibition of  
4 patient access -- for example, through effects on  
5 pricing or through limitations on volume due to a sole  
6 provider of a genetic test -- the inhibition of  
7 product or test improvement due to sole provider and  
8 lack of competition, inhibition of test verification,  
9 detriment to quality -- for example, no incentives to  
10 quality control -- and especially in the future,  
11 concerns about the creation of patent thickets.

12           There are many perceived benefits as well to  
13 patents and the patenting of genes. There are moral  
14 arguments on this end of the spectrum as well.

15           There is also the strong argument of induced  
16 investment, the idea that patents are designed to  
17 prevent what is called the "free rider" problem:  
18 somebody else does all the work but then you benefit  
19 because copying costs are low.

20           It compensates the need for post-invention  
21 investment, especially important in a realm where  
22 there are regulatory burdens to be met.

1           There is the idea of stimulating  
2 commercialization, the idea that test aggregation can  
3 be a benefit in and of itself, the idea that by  
4 granting patents and licenses one can empower the  
5 little guy to enhance innovation, and then, I think,  
6 the ever-present issue that gene patents and licensing  
7 cannot be thought of in a complete vacuum in regard to  
8 other patents and licensing.

9           Patents in general work pretty well in this  
10 country. They have stimulated a lot of innovation,  
11 and there is great concern that we don't want to throw  
12 the baby out with the bath water by tinkering with one  
13 aspect that then has unintended effects.

14           The moral and the ethical arguments can be  
15 boiled down, I think, to a couple of different  
16 positions on both ends of the spectrum. The moral  
17 objections to the patenting of genes are often phrased  
18 in a deontological or a Kantian context. That is,  
19 there is an inherent value issue at stake here. There  
20 is something inherently special about our genes. They  
21 define us in a special way that epinephrine and  
22 insulin perhaps do not.

1           This is often phrased in terms of ownership.  
2        "No one should own your genes." As we will get into  
3       in a little bit, I think that those two things are  
4       actually separable from one another.

5           Those arguments oftentimes rely on a concept  
6       of genetic exceptionalism, which I think we all agree  
7       when overboard doesn't make any sense. But to some  
8       extent, genes are special. That is a balance that we  
9       have to grapple with. The very existence of this  
10      Committee, if you look at what the acronym stands for,  
11      in some ways implies that genes are special and that  
12      genetic technology has some special nuances to it  
13      which I don't think are irrelevant to this discussion.

14           There are also purely utilitarian arguments.  
15      There is the idea that patenting might inhibit  
16      research instead of promoting it, as is the intent.  
17      It might inhibit development and access by patients  
18      and clinicians to genetic tests.

19           The moral arguments for patenting genes are  
20      oftentimes, and I would say usually, utilitarian.  
21      Benefits accrue to society by harnessing self-interest  
22      via the granting of patents, and they thereby

1 encourage innovation.

2           There are value-driven arguments as well.  
3 Rewards should accrue to the inventor. That is the  
4 Natural Rights argument for patenting.

5           One of the things I want to spend one slide  
6 of discussion on is this issue of ownership. I think  
7 that the arguments against the patenting of genes  
8 shouldn't necessarily be conflated with the idea of  
9 ownership. This is a slide essentially from Jorge  
10 Goldstein, who asked the question "Who owns your  
11 genes?" The answer, he claimed, was it depends. If  
12 they are in your body, you do. If they have been  
13 extracted and are in a test tube, the hospital, the  
14 company, or the lab owns them.

15           His point was that you own the tangible and  
16 the personal property, but intellectual property is in  
17 many ways divorceable from that tangible personal  
18 property and someone else can own the IP. That makes  
19 sense to me.

20           The effects of the current system of gene  
21 patenting and licensing on research was the focus of  
22 this NRC report that I mentioned that we spent some

1 time discussing at a prior meeting. It addressed  
2 patents and licensing practices and primarily focuses  
3 on their effects on research and innovation. They  
4 ended up with 13 recommendations, and 12 of those  
5 recommendations had to do exclusively with research  
6 issues.

7           They concluded in the realm of research that  
8 for the time being it appears that access to patented  
9 inventions or information inputs into biomedical  
10 research rarely imposes a significant burden for  
11 biomedical researchers. They did have a caveat with  
12 that, however, and felt there were several reasons to  
13 be cautious about the future. That included the  
14 increasing complexity of the gene patenting and  
15 licensing practicing landscape, the potential for  
16 patent thickets due to multiplex technologies, and the  
17 impact on patient access to genetic technologies and  
18 testing.

19           Their final recommendation, Recommendation  
20 No. 13, had to do with concerns over independent  
21 verification of sole provider-offered tests, who limit  
22 such verification. I find that a bit of a distraction

1 from the main issues here. I think that it is a great  
2 report but, again, all the more reason that this  
3 Committee took it up. Their choice of what to focus  
4 on from the clinical aspect, as clinicians, seemed a  
5 bit odd to many of us. Certainly, that wasn't their  
6 main goal.

7           A major function of the patent system is to  
8 induce investment. This is especially vital when  
9 development costs are high and copying costs are low.  
10 You don't want somebody having to invest lots and  
11 lots of money in something so that everybody else can  
12 copy it. You need some kind of protection in that  
13 setting.

14           I would emphasize that the specific use to  
15 which genetic knowledge is applied affects the need  
16 for patent protection. This follows from that first  
17 bullet. I think that can all be summed up by saying  
18 that all gene applications are not created equal.  
19 There are applications of genetic technology that may  
20 have very high development costs and very low copying  
21 costs. There are other applications of genetic  
22 technology that actually have very low development

1 costs, and thus it is hard to argue that one might  
2 need patent incentivization and protection for such  
3 uses.

4 I think we need to look at gene patents and  
5 licensing not as a monolithic entity. There may be a  
6 variety of different uses for such patents, some of  
7 which should, very logically perhaps, be afforded  
8 patent protection, others of which one could  
9 legitimately argue about.

10 The positive and negative effects of current  
11 gene patenting and licensing practices on patient  
12 access to genetic technologies was a focus of this  
13 task force. We focused on gene patents for health-  
14 related tests: diagnostic tests, predictive tests,  
15 and other clinical purposes. I will get to the  
16 definition of terms in a moment.

17 We wanted to look at both what we called  
18 clinical access and patient access. While we went  
19 over all of those at a previous meeting, I  
20 occasionally forget minor points that were in meetings  
21 two years ago, so we will go over those again.

22 We wanted to consider the effects of this on

1 translational research. For very good reasons,  
2 translational research is in the news now. It doesn't  
3 do any good if you have advances that never make it to  
4 the bedside.

5           We specifically excluded drug or other  
6 therapeutic product development. That is a very  
7 different application of genetic technology and one  
8 that was not in our purview.

9           Here is the study plan. Those things in  
10 black, we have essentially done. We have undergone  
11 literature review, expert consultations, case studies,  
12 and have commissioned further research. We have  
13 gathered international perspectives, including  
14 identifying experts, had the roundtable I referred to,  
15 the analysis of those perspectives, and then the  
16 analysis and synthesis of the literature review, the  
17 data, the input from these experts, and the  
18 international approaches.

19           We tried to synthesize all that to develop  
20 this range of recommendations for further refinement  
21 and comment upon by the public. We are now at the  
22 threshold of eliciting some kind of formal public

1 perspective. Obviously, this is something that, at  
2 any SACGHS meeting, the public can and is encouraged  
3 to make comments about.

4           Of course, now with the release of a draft  
5 report, we will solicit their comments in a formal  
6 way. We will then need to compile and summarize those  
7 comments. We will need to analyze those and  
8 eventually come up with a set of actual  
9 recommendations for the Secretary.

10           Today is in yellow. What we want to do is  
11 approve, if we can, the draft report to be released  
12 for public comment.

13           A couple things about terminology. We could  
14 spend days talking about what a genetic test is. A  
15 family history could be a genetic test. We obviously  
16 need some tractable, facile type of definition for our  
17 purposes.

18           What we settled on was that a genetic test,  
19 for the purposes of this study -- we are not trying to  
20 make any claims about any broad definition -- is any  
21 test performed using molecular biology methods to test  
22 DNA or RNA, including germ line, heritable and

1 acquired somatic variations. This would include  
2 things like microarray technology, sequencing, TACMAN  
3 identification of a particular allele, et cetera.

4 We used the term "clinical access" to mean  
5 the access by a healthcare professional to obtain the  
6 tests that they feel are required or of benefit to  
7 their patients. This involves, necessarily, the issue  
8 of reimbursement and cost issues, in addition to the  
9 medical use of genetic information.

10 Finally, "patient access" is pretty  
11 straightforward: Can the patient get a needed genetic  
12 test.

13 We had a number of study questions. Some of  
14 these were answered in more detail than others for a  
15 variety of reasons: What is the role of U.S. patent  
16 policy in patient and clinical access to existing and  
17 developing genetic tests; how does a patent owner's  
18 use, enforcement, and licensing of patented genetic  
19 information affect the patient and clinical access;  
20 how does legal interpretation of the patentability and  
21 patent boundaries affect patient and clinical access  
22 to such technologies.

1           I think, all through this, we should keep  
2 very firmly in mind the impact and the relationship  
3 between patents and licensing. How one handles  
4 patents in the realm of licensing is absolutely  
5 critical to things related to access by patients.

6           We will be talking a lot about licensing  
7 practices: How are licensing practices affecting  
8 patient and clinical access to genetic information and  
9 tests; how are licensing practices affecting the  
10 ability of industry and academia to develop genetic  
11 tests; what role do technology transfer programs play  
12 in influencing clinical access to genetic tests; what  
13 kind of evidence have we found, and can we find.

14           If there are barriers to patient and  
15 clinical access to genetic tests, where within the  
16 healthcare system do those barriers exist; what  
17 elements of the patent system relate to these aspects  
18 of the healthcare system. With regard to the  
19 development and the translation of this type of  
20 research, in what ways do gene patents and/or  
21 licensing and enforcement practices enhance or create  
22 incentives or barriers to the development,

1 implementation, and continued performance of clinical  
2 genetic tests.

3           How about cost? What are the economic data,  
4 or the studies that analyze the contribution of gene  
5 patents to the cost of genetic tests and, ultimately,  
6 to patient access and treatment outcomes; what is the  
7 evidence of positive and negative effects of gene  
8 patents and licensing enforcement practices on the  
9 cost and the pricing of genetic tests.

10           Quality is often brought up in this context  
11 as well: How is the quality of genetic testing  
12 affected by the current landscape of gene patents and  
13 licensing practices; how are such patents and  
14 practices impacting, and how might they impact, the  
15 ability to perform multiple gene tests, panels, and  
16 arrays.

17           One of the things that I want to emphasize  
18 as a clinical geneticist is that it is clear to many  
19 of us that the future of genetic tests likely lies in  
20 multiplexing and the increasingly robust technologies  
21 we have for genomic characterization and scrutiny. I  
22 think that it is very important, as we go forward

1 thinking about gene patents and licensing, to think  
2 about how these policies will play out in a new era  
3 where, for example, the \$1,000 genome will likely be a  
4 reality within the next few years.

5           What other measures and approaches could be  
6 employed to assess the direct effect of gene patents  
7 and licensing practices on patient access and  
8 treatment outcomes to genetic tests?

9           There have been a lot of alternative models  
10 that have been proposed to try to handle these types  
11 of things. Are some of those feasible, perhaps ones  
12 that have been developed by other countries? Are  
13 there innovations that could be applied to the patent  
14 and licensing system to enhance the benefits of the  
15 system to help ameliorate problems that are  
16 identified.

17           What are the lessons from parallel  
18 situations in health care and in other areas?  
19 Software comes to mind. Software has dealt, in many  
20 ways, with similar issues of enhanced or restricted  
21 access to a given technology or information.

22           Coming down on that huge busy slide, our

1 study plan consisted, in part, of literature review,  
2 expert consultations, case studies, and some  
3 additional research.

4           There have been a number of previous policy  
5 studies. This is not a field that there is any  
6 paucity of studies and opinion on, which is something  
7 that makes it all the more daunting for our group.

8           Can we say anything new about this? My own  
9 view is that yes, we can, because we crafted the  
10 scope, amongst this Committee, to look at something  
11 quite specific, and that is our major charge, which is  
12 patient access to the fruits of this kind of  
13 technology. Many of the previous studies have had  
14 much broader aims.

15           The Nuffield Council released a report on  
16 the ethics of DNA patenting. The Federal Trade  
17 Commission, in 2003, looked at the proper balance of  
18 competition and patent law and policy. The Australia  
19 Law Reform Commission delved deeply into these issues  
20 in 2004. The Organization for Economic Cooperation  
21 and Development, in 2006, released guidelines for the  
22 licensing of genetic inventions. Then there was that

1 oft-referred to report that I mentioned before from  
2 the National Research Council that came out in 2006.

3           We felt that a very productive way of trying  
4 to learn lessons about where we stand and where we are  
5 going, in the realm of gene patents and licensing,  
6 would be through commissioning case studies that we  
7 will describe in some great detail. These case  
8 studies were commissioned by us and were conducted by  
9 Bob Cook-Deegan and Shubha.

10           Shubha, I am just not even going to try to  
11 butcher your name. I apologize.

12           DR. CHANDRASEKHARAN: You already butchered  
13 Bob's.

14           DR. EVANS: Bob Cook-Deegan. How could I  
15 butcher Bob's name? Did I not say "Deegan"? I'm  
16 sorry, I'm sorry.

17           Regardless of exactly how you pronounce  
18 their names, it is an extraordinarily talented group.  
19 They are not very good at basketball, but they are  
20 great at this stuff.

21           [Laughter.]

22           DR. EVANS: They have done a tremendous job

1 of really, I think, as best as possible, distilling  
2 some lessons from the current landscape by looking at  
3 natural experiments in gene patenting and licensing.  
4 They focused on a number of case studies which are  
5 instructive, each for their own peculiar and  
6 particular reasons, which we will go into.

7           They looked at breast and colon cancer,  
8 Alzheimer's disease, spinocerebellar ataxia, hearing  
9 loss, hemochromatosis, Tay-Sachs and Canavan disease,  
10 cystic fibrosis, and finally, Long QT syndrome.

11           These were not picked at random. These were  
12 picked for very specific purposes. They provide a  
13 nice, broad analysis of patenting and licensing  
14 formats for disease genes. They include most of the  
15 most clinically pursued tests in the clinical realm.  
16 Because of their juxtapositions, for example with  
17 breast and colon cancer in one study, they provide  
18 natural experiments for trying to tease out the role  
19 of patents and licensing.

20           We can learn some general lessons from these  
21 things. We can look at diagnostic development, the  
22 commercialization, communications and marketing, what

1 the adoption by clinical providers and testing labs  
2 has been like and how it perhaps is influenced by the  
3 patenting and licensing landscape, whether adoption by  
4 third-party payers is influenced, and things like  
5 consumer utilization.

6           Parameters of access are multi-fold. One is  
7 whether a diagnostic test is even available, and  
8 whether improvements are available, because just  
9 having a test available isn't necessarily what you  
10 want. You want a test that is able to be improved as  
11 technology advances.

12           You want to see that the cost of the test is  
13 reasonable to both the provider and the patient. You  
14 want to see how quickly a test is available following  
15 discovery of a connection between a particular  
16 genotype and phenotype and how rapidly that test  
17 evolves and improves as future discoveries are made.

18           Finally, another parameter of that is simply  
19 the number of distinct test providers that exist.  
20 There are many factors that affect access.

21           Some of these are directly influenced by  
22 intellectual property rights. For example, the

1 availability of a test following the discovery that a  
2 particular gene or mutation is associated with that  
3 disease is directly influenced by the IP landscape.  
4 The number of providers offering a test is directly  
5 influenced by how licensing is carried out, et cetera,  
6 and how infringement claims are enforced by a patent  
7 holder.

8           The test price directly influences access in  
9 the sense that if it is exorbitantly priced, very few  
10 people are going to be able to avail themselves of  
11 that test.

12           There are a number of indirect factors as  
13 well. Coverage and reimbursement in our, to use the  
14 term loosely, medical system is very important. If a  
15 test is not covered, that affects access in a profound  
16 manner.

17           The utility of a test for clinical decision-  
18 making is important, and the evidence for whether it  
19 has utility or not has an important impact on access.

20           Quality of testing services is important.  
21 Again, it is not good enough just to have a test. You  
22 need a test that is of high quality.

1           There are logistical issues; that is, hassle  
2 factors. If a test is very difficult to get, that is  
3 going to indirectly affect access, as will the fear of  
4 genetic discrimination.

5           It is amazing to me. In some ways I think  
6 the passage of GINA has raised the awareness of  
7 genetic discrimination in the public's mind. It is  
8 rare for me to go a single day in clinic without being  
9 asked about fears of genetic discrimination by a  
10 patient undergoing testing. It is amazing the impact  
11 that has. I think it, again, adds to the importance  
12 of what this Committee did in trying to promote the  
13 passage of GINA.

14           Now, before I start talking about the case  
15 studies, any comments? I hope people will jump in. I  
16 know this is such a shy and retiring group. We  
17 actually have two people who are literally retiring.

18           [Laughter.]

19           DR. EVANS: But I don't think anybody here  
20 is very figuratively retiring, so please hop in and  
21 comment. I don't mean to make an unbearable  
22 monologue.

1           So let's look first at breast cancer and  
2 colon cancer from a hereditary standpoint and the  
3 patenting landscape. No particular test has gotten  
4 more attention, I think it is safe to say, than BRCA1  
5 and -2. Interestingly, I would add that BRCA1 and -2  
6 are the most sequenced genes in the history of  
7 biology. Hundreds of thousands of individuals have  
8 had their BRCA1 and -2 genes sequenced. It is really  
9 a massive experiment in analysis of human  
10 individuality.

11           BRCA1 and -2 and the colon cancer genes have  
12 been sequenced so many times because they offer  
13 clinical utility. There is value to a patient and to  
14 a provider in knowing someone's status with regard to  
15 BRCA1 and -2 and HNPCC.

16           BRCA1 and -2 are genes that, when mutated,  
17 increase the risk of breast and ovarian cancer in  
18 those individuals who harbor those mutations. Broad  
19 patent rights exist to both genes and are held by  
20 Myriad  
21 Genetics in Salt Lake City. They are the sole  
22 provider of full-sequence BRCA testing in the U.S.

1           Now, Hereditary Non-Polyposis Colorectal  
2 Cancer, HNPCC, or Lynch syndrome, as well as Familial  
3 Adenomatous Polyposis, are both colon cancer syndromes  
4 that differ significantly clinically, but the take-  
5 home message is that both result in an extraordinarily  
6 high risk of colon cancer during one's lifetime.

7           Mutations in the Lynch-associated genes,  
8 primarily MLH1, MSH2, and MSH6, as well as the FAP-  
9 associated gene, which is the APC, or Adenomatous  
10 Polyposis-coli gene, are very strongly associated with  
11 the risk of developing colon cancer. Patent rights  
12 for these genes are predominately held by nonprofit  
13 entities and are licensed non-exclusively. That is in  
14 stark contrast to the situation with BRCA1 and -2.  
15 Multiple test providers for full-sequence analysis of  
16 genes associated with HNPCC and FAP exist.

17           So one can immediately see you have a  
18 natural experiment here. You have similar types of  
19 predictive power from these genetic tests, in one case  
20 for breast/ovarian and in the other case predominantly  
21 colon. In one case you have a sole provider, an  
22 exclusive license, and patents that are enforced, and

1 on the other hand you have the colon cancer situation  
2 in which you have multiple non-exclusive licensees of  
3 that testing and it is not by any means a sole-source  
4 type of test.

5           Let's look first at test price. This is a  
6 good case by which to try to tease out the impact of  
7 gene patents and licensing on cost. This is something  
8 that I think surprised many of us. It surprised me.  
9 Let's march through this.

10           Full-sequence analysis of BRCA1 and -2 costs  
11 \$3,100. Actually, that is up to about \$3,300 now.  
12 This slide is a little out of date. HNPCC testing  
13 ranges from \$1,150 per gene to \$4,760 for sequence  
14 analysis of those three major genes I mentioned.

15           HNPCC rearrangement testing services vary in  
16 availability and cost. I should mention that the  
17 BRCA1 and -2 analysis includes large rearrangement  
18 analysis and, if a patient meets a certain threshold  
19 of risk, another technique that is performed to look  
20 for smaller types of insertions and deletions.

21           FAP testing ranges from \$1,200 to \$1,800 for  
22 sequence analysis of that gene. FAP rearrangement or

1 dosage testing services vary in availability and cost.

2           Myriad not only offers BRCA1 and -2 testing,  
3 and indeed, of course, is the only one to offer that,  
4 but they also offer colon cancer testing for APC  
5 mutation detection through sequencing. They also  
6 offer Lynch-associated gene sequencing and  
7 rearrangement analysis.

8           Probably the best way to try to compare  
9 costs in the realm of this type of diagnostic is the  
10 cost per amplicon per segment of the gene that needs  
11 to be amplified by the polymerase chain reaction.  
12 That cost per amplicon by BRCA1 and -2 is \$38 per  
13 amplicon.

14           The APC gene, which again is not exclusively  
15 licensed, is available through many sources. It costs  
16 at the same place, at Myriad, about \$41 per amplicon.  
17 That includes southern blot rearrangement,  
18 insertion/deletion testing, and a couple of founder  
19 mutations for the MYH gene.

20           The cost of testing through the nonprofit  
21 competitor laboratories ranges from \$1,200 to \$1,600,  
22 from \$28 to \$40 per amplicon. Rearrangement testing

1 is generally not included in that price. So you see  
2 relatively equity in the costs of these tests. Kevin.

3 DR. FITZGERALD: A quick question. I can  
4 understand why you picked amplicon. I didn't see some  
5 of this in the case studies, but I didn't look at them  
6 that closely. I imagine it is in there. What about  
7 the predictive levels of the tests? Are they all  
8 pretty much comparable?

9 DR. EVANS: Yes. Throwing out APC for a  
10 minute, if you have classic FAP you have 100 percent  
11 chance of getting colon cancer throughout your life.  
12 But if you compare Lynch syndrome, HNPCC, with BRCA,  
13 they are amazingly similar. It is about an 85 percent  
14 chance of colon cancer to the age of 80, and it is  
15 about an 85 percent chance of breast cancer if you  
16 have a BRCA1 or -2 mutation. So, really a very nice  
17 natural experiment.

18 COL McLEAN: I was just going to say, if you  
19 throw in the attenuated FAP studies, it washes out.

20 DR. EVANS: Right. What Scott is bringing  
21 up is there is a condition called attenuated FAP in  
22 which the risk is not 100 percent. So really, you

1 lump them all together and, again, it is a beautiful  
2 natural experiment.

3 Yes, Sylvia.

4 MS. AU: I'm sorry. I forgot. Were these  
5 the advertised prices or the institutional prices?

6 DR. EVANS: This is if you send the box to  
7 Myriad or send it to those labs. That is a bit  
8 arcane. What Sylvia is referring to is when you send  
9 a lab test out through a laboratory, like hospitals,  
10 there is additional cost tacked onto that. This does  
11 not include that. Or, you can negotiate a lower  
12 price.

13 So, trying to estimate patent premiums.  
14 Lynch syndrome is offered by multiple providers,  
15 including Myriad. It is non-exclusively licensed.  
16 The cost of testing through Myriad is \$3,000. That  
17 comes to about \$50 per amplicon. That includes  
18 southern blot analysis. That is compared with \$38 per  
19 amplicon for their BRCA test. This is a within-  
20 laboratory comparison of, on one hand, the exclusively  
21 self-licensed BRCA test versus the non-exclusively  
22 licensed Lynch syndrome test.

1           The cost of testing through nonprofit  
2 competitor laboratories ranges from \$30 to \$77 per  
3 amplicon. It generally doesn't include rearrangement  
4 testing.

5           There are concerns regarding Myriad's sole  
6 provider status. Analyzing Myriad and BRCA1 and -2  
7 has become a cottage industry. It is like the Cuban  
8 Missile Crisis; there is a book that comes out every  
9 six months. There is a study that comes out every six  
10 months on BRCA1 and -2. You can learn a lot from  
11 these, but they really get to be tedious reading after  
12 a while.

13           Some of the concerns include what  
14 constitutes infringement and the concerns that there  
15 is too broad a consideration of what actually is  
16 infringement. There is concern that this sole  
17 provider status limits strategies for testing.

18           There was a furor a couple of years ago  
19 about the possibility of incomplete testing that we  
20 can talk about if you want to. Basically, the idea  
21 was that when you have a sole provider there is  
22 presumably less incentive for that provider to offer

1 innovative new tests that could increase sensitivity  
2 or increase specificity.

3           That was brought into focus when an article  
4 was published by Mary Claire King's group in JAMA that  
5 showed that a certain percentage of BRCA mutations  
6 were not detectable by the then-current procedure that  
7 Myriad used. Shortly after that, Myriad came out with  
8 that more extensive analysis that could pick up those  
9 deletions and insertions.

10           There are concerns regarding Myriad's patent  
11 enforcement. A 2003 survey found nine instances of  
12 enforcement of BRCA patents by Myriad. That same  
13 survey found two instances of FAP patent enforcement  
14 and no instances of Lynch, or HNPCC, patent  
15 enforcement. Enforcement actions basically serve to  
16 clear the market and drive users to Myriad's testing  
17 services.

18           The question arises, did the prospect of  
19 patents encourage the search for gene-disease  
20 association in the first place. If the prospect of a  
21 patent on a gene is a major driver in the discovery of  
22 that gene's association with a disease, then that is,

1 arguably, an important benefit.

2           In the case studies, the precise stimulus  
3 for a breast/ovarian cancer gene search was unclear.  
4 Access to data and exclusive rights to therapeutics  
5 involving genes attracted industry funding for the  
6 search. I would point out that therapeutics and  
7 genetic testing are very different things.

8           The development and commercialization of a  
9 test for HNPCC gene, MLH1, did play a role in  
10 stimulating research in this area. The HNPCC patents  
11 were non-exclusively licensed once they were  
12 discovered. Yes?

13           DR. AMOS: I was just wondering if you had  
14 looked into the issue of having access to patents and  
15 the protection it affords into incentives for  
16 investing in other genetic testing companies by  
17 investors.

18           DR. EVANS: In what way?

19           DR. AMOS: Myriad has made a lot of money  
20 with this.

21           DR. EVANS: Actually, they haven't. They  
22 have lost money every quarter.

1 [Laughter.]

2 DR. EVANS: Seriously, it's a very  
3 interesting story.

4 DR. AMOS: They are spending more on R&D  
5 than they get in revenue. But I'm just wondering,  
6 because I think that is an important thing to  
7 consider.

8 DR. EVANS: Right. Actually, keep that in  
9 mind because some of the other case studies I think  
10 address that perhaps better than this one does.

11 DR. LEONARD: One of the things that is  
12 interesting to think about is that a large proportion  
13 of gene patents are held by academic institutions. I  
14 think basically the drive there for invention is the  
15 fact that you have patients who are sick and need  
16 diagnostic or therapeutic interventions that don't  
17 currently exist, as well as the academic promotion  
18 system that requires physicians and researchers to  
19 invent and create and do research to be promoted and  
20 succeed in their own careers.

21 While academic institutions certainly  
22 benefit from patents that bring financial gain to the

1 academic institution in the currently nebulous  
2 academic economic environment, that is not really the  
3 driving force for these inventions. Since the vast  
4 majority of these are held by academic institutions,  
5 and we can talk about their misuse in the licensing of  
6 these, it doesn't seem to me that the patent system  
7 drives these inventions.

8 DR. EVANS: I think that is absolutely true.  
9 I think that is important. As we march through  
10 these, keep in mind what Debra says. I completely  
11 agree. I think that the incentive for discovery in  
12 this realm arguably has not been dependent on the  
13 prospect of patents. We address that in each of these  
14 case studies.

15 The role of patents in test  
16 commercialization. Again, it is important not only to  
17 make these discoveries but to commercialize them, or  
18 at least get the tests out there so people can get  
19 them. It is not enough just to discover them. That  
20 really was the genesis of the Bayh-Dole Act.

21 Myriad enforces its BRCA1 and -2 patents.  
22 It serves as the sole provider. Patents for Lynch

1 syndrome-associated genes have been licensed non-  
2 exclusively. So, has there been a difference in the  
3 commercialization? It doesn't appear so. You can get  
4 Lynch syndrome testing in a variety of different  
5 venues. You can get BRCA testing at Myriad.

6           How do patents and licensing practices  
7 affect price. As the sole provider of BRCA1 and -2  
8 testing, the main effect of the patent really comes  
9 down to testing volume. Presumably, the business plan  
10 that Myriad is pursuing is that they are able to get a  
11 higher volume. Therefore, they are content with a  
12 lower price and getting that higher number of users,  
13 versus if they were to charge a higher price and have  
14 fewer users.

15           There is another externality in this whole  
16 economic equation in genetic testing that hinges on  
17 the bizarre aspects of our medical care system, and  
18 that is the issue of third-party payers. If you own a  
19 patent on a gene and you don't license it and say, I'm  
20 going to be the sole provider, there is also a limit  
21 on what you can charge because, except for the 47  
22 million people who don't have insurance, people are

1 used to having insurance pay for their medical tests.

2 You have to keep that in mind as you price the test,  
3 and that is another externality that is important to  
4 consider here.

5 DR. WILLIAMS: The other point to consider  
6 relating to this is that part of the Myriad business  
7 model was that the full sequencing test was really  
8 going to be an entry for what they anticipated would  
9 be a large number of family members that would have  
10 targeted sequence analysis, which would then also  
11 generate revenue. Of course that is a lower-priced  
12 test, but you could argue that the marginal profit on  
13 that test is higher than the original sequencing.

14 Now, part of the issue relating to their  
15 current business and profit relates to how many family  
16 members they thought would avail themselves of the  
17 follow-up testing, and that is an issue. But that  
18 does impact that top price.

19 DR. EVANS: It sure does, yes.

20 So, what is the potential that the patent  
21 might cause some future harm. I think that while, as  
22 Yogi Berra said, making predictions is difficult,

1 especially when they are about the future --

2 PARTICIPANT: Niels Bohr said that.

3 DR. EVANS: Oh, it was Niels Bohr. He is a  
4 much higher authority, actually.

5 [Laughter.]

6 DR. EVANS: The question I think we have to  
7 keep in mind is, obviously we are not going to be able  
8 to know what the landscape will be like in the future.  
9 But I do think we have to try very hard to anticipate  
10 problems that loom large.

11 Now, Myriad could conceivably file patent  
12 applications for new mutations identified in these  
13 genes. I actually think that is quite unlikely.  
14 There have been thousands of individual mutations that  
15 have been identified. I don't think that is a  
16 realistic fear.

17 On the other hand, I think that we have to  
18 think hard about whole genome sequencing and how it  
19 will have an effect on this whole landscape. We are  
20 already able to do whole genome genotyping at a  
21 million loci in an afternoon. I think most people  
22 realistically feel that in the next few years we will

1 have whole genome sequencing at some feasible  
2 realistic price. How is that going to interact with  
3 the fact that, by some estimates, 20 percent of your  
4 genome is staked out in patents.

5           Case No. 2 is the Alzheimer's disease study,  
6 which has its own particular lessons that can be  
7 learned. There have been essentially four genes  
8 associated with Alzheimer's disease in humans. Three  
9 of those genes are what we call high-penetrance, low-  
10 frequency genes: Presenilin-1 and -2 and the Amyloid  
11 Precursor Protein. These are genes that, when  
12 mutated, result in an extraordinarily high risk of  
13 early Alzheimer's disease. Mine will be kicking in  
14 this afternoon, but hopefully we will be done with  
15 this session by then.

16           In contrast to that, the ApoE gene is  
17 polymorphic in the general population. One allele of  
18 the ApoE gene, the ApoE-4 allele, is predisposing to  
19 run-of-the-mill, garden-variety Alzheimer's disease.  
20 If you have an ApoE-4 allele, or if you have two ApoE-  
21 4 alleles, your risk is higher than it would have been  
22 otherwise for Alzheimer's disease, but there is no

1 deterministic aspect to this like there is in  
2 Presenilin-1 and -2 or Amyloid Precursor Protein  
3 mutations.

4 ApoE-2, on the other hand, is protective of  
5 Alzheimer's disease. One sees a lower risk for those  
6 lucky individuals who carry one of those  
7 polymorphisms.

8 Broad screening is not recommended for any  
9 of these genes. You test those three first genes,  
10 Presenilins and APP, if your patient is in a family  
11 that has early-onset Alzheimer's at a very high  
12 prevalence in the family.

13 ApoE-4 is an allele that is shared by many  
14 of us in this room. It is generally considered that  
15 it is pointless at this point, and perhaps harmful, to  
16 just engage in screening of the population for the  
17 ApoE gene. That could change. That could change, for  
18 example, if preventive measures came to the fore which  
19 could be applied in individuals who were at higher  
20 risk. But right now nobody is really recommending  
21 ApoE screening in the general population.

22 On the other hand, its recommended use is to

1 confirm a diagnosis in individuals who have already  
2 developed dementia. It is not a very clinically  
3 useful test, but it at least theoretically could help  
4 you have some increased confidence in your diagnosis  
5 of Alzheimer's disease in an individual patient.

6 ApoE testing, interestingly, is also  
7 available for cardiovascular risk-determining  
8 purposes, but that side effect, if you will, of also  
9 learning about your Alzheimer's risk is one that plays  
10 out in such a manner that very few people get ApoE  
11 testing.

12 Patents have been issued in the U.S.  
13 relative to testing for all four of those genes. Duke  
14 University holds three methods patents on ApoE testing  
15 which are licensed exclusively to Athena Diagnostics.

16 Athena charges \$475 for their ApoE testing.  
17 You can see the range of prices there among other  
18 labs.

19 I would point out, just so people don't get  
20 confused, that the test for ApoE is a very different  
21 test than something like BRCA or Lynch. That is  
22 really what underlies how much cheaper this test is

1 than those other tests.

2 Health insurance companies differ over  
3 whether to cover Alzheimer's disease testing or deny  
4 claims on the ground the tests are still experimental.

5 DR. LEONARD: Just so you don't think it is  
6 just Canadian laboratories, when the University of  
7 Pennsylvania laboratory was stopped from doing ApoE  
8 testing we were charging \$125.

9 DR. EVANS: That is important.

10 So, did the prospect of patents encourage  
11 the search for gene-disease associations. The case  
12 study indicates that the prospect of a patent really  
13 was not needed to stimulate research in the area of  
14 Alzheimer's disease.

15 How about the role of patents in test  
16 commercialization? Patents provided a mechanism for  
17 aggregating patent rights from disparate academic  
18 groups and consolidating that testing.

19 Now, whether that is a plus or a minus  
20 depends on which side of the fence you are talking  
21 about. I think you can argue that aggregation just in  
22 and of itself is not necessarily a good thing, though

1 in certain circumstances it can be useful and it can  
2 be a good thing.

3           It was intended, according to the patent  
4 holders to this exclusive licensing, to limit the  
5 testing to individuals already diagnosed with  
6 dementia. That is, they felt that patents were a  
7 mechanism by which they could help ensure proper use  
8 of this test clinically. I'm not sure how well that  
9 has worked.

10           So, how is price affected. It is unclear  
11 how Athena's enforcement of this exclusivity affected  
12 price, although, as Debra just mentioned, the  
13 University of Pennsylvania's prices, before they were  
14 prohibited from testing, as well as the Canadian  
15 providers', were significantly lower. Price  
16 information wasn't available for the Presenilin-2 and  
17 Amyloid Precursor Protein. Yes.

18           DR. DREYFUSS: Can you clarify what you mean  
19 when you say the patent is helpful in aggregating the  
20 tests? If there would have been no patents, any one  
21 company could have given all the tests.

22           DR. EVANS: I think that is a fair

1 statement.

2 DR. DREYFUSS: So I don't understand what  
3 the word "aggregation" means.

4 DR. EVANS: Bob, do you care to comment on  
5 that?

6 DR. COOK-DEEGAN: The argument goes that it  
7 prevents others from entering the market if you make  
8 the investment in entering it first. That is the  
9 argument. So you aggregate the patents and you  
10 prevent other competitors from being able to enter the  
11 market.

12 DR. DREYFUSS: Either that is an argument  
13 about free riders or it is an argument that says you  
14 want to achieve economies of scale and that way you  
15 don't have any competitors. But it is not really an  
16 argument that without the patents you couldn't offer  
17 all those tests.

18 DR. EVANS: In fact, there are a lot of  
19 common examples. Look at something like Lynch  
20 syndrome. You have aggregation without patents.

21 Yes, Lori.

22 DR. PRESSMAN: The business reason to do it

1 is that the aggregate market might be larger than if  
2 it is fragmented.

3 DR. EVANS: Yes. So, how about the role of  
4 patents and licensing in the availability of the test.

5 It is unclear whether Athena's monopolies will  
6 benefit or harm availability in and of themselves.  
7 Athena offers two programs that reduce out-of-pocket  
8 cost of testing. One is their Patient Protection  
9 Program that limits the cost that a patient will have  
10 out of pocket to 20 percent of the test. Now, for  
11 this test, that is, arguably, not a huge amount of  
12 money, but keep this in mind as we go on.

13 They also have a program called Athena  
14 Access that offers free or low-cost testing to some  
15 patients. Yes.

16 DR. LEONARD: As a clinician, have you ever  
17 been able to access this program with Athena?

18 DR. EVANS: Let's hold off and get to that  
19 in a minute because I will answer that question when  
20 we are talking about SCA.

21 What is the potential that the patent may  
22 cause future harm. It isn't clear whether multiplex

1 tests would infringe on the patents in this particular  
2 case, and it is not clear whether direct-to-consumer  
3 tests like Navigenics would infringe on patents by  
4 indirectly assessing Alzheimer's risk.

5           This is interesting. I Emailed Bob about  
6 this just a few days ago. It looks like in the  
7 Navigenics test that what is being tested is a SNP  
8 that is about 14KB from the ApoE gene and it is tight  
9 linkage disequilibrium. So my thinking was that,  
10 actually, that particular application may not  
11 infringe. But certainly, with sequencing of that  
12 region I would think you would have a pretty clear  
13 case of infringement.

14           Spinocerebellar ataxia is a really bad  
15 disease. All these diseases are not ones I would sign  
16 up for, but this would be really low on my list. It  
17 is a rare subset of neurological diseases, and it is  
18 characterized by loss of cells in the cerebellum.  
19 That is the region of the brain that really controls  
20 your spatial orientation, the way your body knows  
21 where your limbs are, et cetera.

22           These can be inherited in a variety of

1 mendelian patterns. It is a genetically heterogeneous  
2 group of diseases with dozens of genes responsible for  
3 clinically highly similar conditions. I think it is  
4 really important that we all remember this issue of  
5 genetic heterogeneity going forward because it is  
6 going to come up over and over again as we talk about  
7 genetic testing and patents.

8           When you see a patient who looks to have  
9 spinocerebellar ataxia, in most cases you really  
10 cannot figure out which of the many, many genes --  
11 there are, I believe, 34 genes that have been  
12 identified so far -- except in rare circumstances,  
13 might be mutated in your patient. What that obviously  
14 means, then, is you can't just say, I'm going to  
15 sequence this one gene, or I'm going to sequence these  
16 two genes. You have to sequence or look at a bunch of  
17 genes to try to find the mutation.

18           There are population differences in the  
19 prevalence of various mutations. For example, in the  
20 Mexican population, there is a higher prevalence of  
21 SCA10. Spinocerebellar ataxia accounts for only about  
22 5 percent of the ataxic population.

1           Ataxia just means that you are doing this  
2 when you walk. You can't walk, you can't maintain  
3 balance. There are many reasons for ataxia, with  
4 these particular syndromes representing a minority of  
5 the etiologies.

6           There is testing available for 15 variants  
7 of SCA. Athena holds the patent or exclusive license  
8 to 12 patents that identify the most commonly  
9 occurring variants, constituting about 60 to 80  
10 percent of SCA cases in which it looks like there is a  
11 genetic underpinning.

12           They were granted a non-exclusive license by  
13 Baylor for one of those genes, SCA10, and they have  
14 been aggressive in the enforcement of this exclusive  
15 license. It is widely assumed that they are the sole  
16 distributor of these tests.

17           How about price? This is an expensive test.

18       Yes, this is your question.

19           DR. LEONARD: No, no. Can we go back to the  
20 previous slide? I would like to point out, while they  
21 may currently be the sole provider, there was actually  
22 a consortium of laboratories that worked on SCA

1 testing, the best ways to do it and how to offer it.  
2 The vast majority of those labs are no longer in  
3 business.

4 DR. EVANS: Right. The market has been  
5 cleared. We will get to that. That's right.

6 Testing for individual genes can range from  
7 \$400 to \$2,300. Again, remember that issue of genetic  
8 heterogeneity. I saw a patient last week who clearly  
9 has SCA, but there were no real defining  
10 characteristics of her disease that allowed me to pick  
11 and choose and say, oh, we need to sequence this gene  
12 to figure it out.

13 Therefore, what one typically needs to do is  
14 the complete ataxia panel. It is a compilation of 13  
15 tests that covers the most commonly identified  
16 mutations. It is \$7,300 dollars. That is an  
17 expensive blood test.

18 Now, there are these two programs to reduce  
19 out-of-pocket costs of testing. One is this Patient  
20 Protection Program, limiting to 20 percent the out-of-  
21 pocket expenses for a patient whose insurance doesn't  
22 cover the test.

1           Now, I would just point out that 20 percent  
2 of \$7,000 is over \$1,400. That is significant. For  
3 the population of patients that I see, that is a  
4 prohibitive amount of money.

5           The Athena Access offers free or low-cost  
6 testing to some patients. I have never had personal  
7 success -- and this is answering your question, Debra  
8 -- in getting this done. It is a laborious procedure  
9 with the documentation that is required.

10           I'm sure it is done. I'm sure it is a  
11 solution. It is certainly not the solution for  
12 getting access to these tests. Scott.

13           COL McLEAN: Just two points. One is that  
14 it still is within the prerogative of a provider to go  
15 one test at a time and not do the panel. That is a  
16 practice of medicine, if you chose to do that. Being  
17 forced into doing a package deal is, in a sense, a  
18 limitation of your prerogative, as a provider, to do  
19 whatever strategy you want to create. I wouldn't  
20 recommend it.

21           DR. EVANS: It is your prerogative, but look  
22 at these prices. I do this every time I see a

1 patient.

2 COL McLEAN: It is cost effective to do them  
3 all at once.

4 DR. EVANS: Yes. If you guess right, you  
5 save money. But if, as is likely, you guess wrong  
6 sorting these out clinically, you end up spending more  
7 money by doing the tests one at a time.

8 COL McLEAN: But if somebody added to the  
9 panel things that you clearly didn't think were  
10 indicated on a clinical basis, you would be forced  
11 into doing something you weren't interested in.

12 DR. EVANS: That is true. So it would be  
13 nice to be able to do a menu to pick and choose. Yes,  
14 that is a good point.

15 COL McLEAN: The other point I would like to  
16 bring up is that in the military healthcare system  
17 patients are never going to pay out of pocket for any  
18 component of a testing panel, so that 20 percent rule  
19 wouldn't really be a benefit.

20 DR. EVANS: Right. But obviously, most  
21 people aren't in the military healthcare system.

22 COL McLEAN: No, but I'm representing them,

1 so I wanted to speak up.

2 DR. EVANS: I see.

3 [Laughter.]

4 DR. EVANS: Exactly. The solution is we  
5 should all join up. Mara.

6 DR. ASPINALL: Just a comment about the  
7 Athena Access program or the Broad Access program. I,  
8 as a non-physician, have not tried to access it but  
9 have tried to manage that program. With the anti-  
10 kickback rules and the requirements that you need to  
11 do to continue to have open and equal access, it is  
12 extremely difficult to actually have the ability to  
13 have those tests open. There are some who have  
14 interpreted that that you actually need to get the tax  
15 return of the patient to do that.

16 DR. EVANS: Oh, yes. W-2s are required.

17 DR. ASPINALL: I think as we talk about  
18 whether anyone has successfully accessed that, it may  
19 be difficult but not necessarily a futile endeavor to  
20 do it. Several of the companies have come, and I  
21 don't know if they will testify to this in this  
22 meeting, but they have talked publicly about allowing

1 access to be open, making that procedure not so  
2 burdensome to the company but, more importantly, not  
3 so burdensome on the patient to truly have to submit a  
4 tax return to get free or low-cost testing.

5 DR. EVANS: I think your point is well  
6 taken. I haven't looked at this firmly. I just know  
7 from my experience that the access is difficult with  
8 this program. I don't know why. There could be all  
9 kinds of reasons.

10 DR. ASPINALL: I just didn't want to imply  
11 that it was their specific program or any one  
12 company's program. In Medicare you have to go by  
13 these rules and the tax return hurdle is just ominous.

14 DR. EVANS: It has been my experience as a  
15 physician that all of these programs are  
16 extraordinarily cumbersome, and I'm sure there are  
17 reasons like that that cut across from company to  
18 company.

19 So, did the prospect of patents encourage  
20 the search for gene-disease association. That really  
21 was not addressed or addressable well in this study.

22 How about the role of patents in test

1 commercialization? Various patent holders exclusively  
2 licensed their patents for different SCA gene variants  
3 to Athena, which then developed various genetic tests,  
4 including a testing panel. Athena has a non-exclusive  
5 license, as mentioned, from Baylor for that one  
6 particular gene. Yes.

7 DR. LEONARD: But while the patent is  
8 encouraging the search, I think almost all of these  
9 are from academic institutions.

10 DR. EVANS: Yes, I believe they all are.

11 DR. LEONARD: Right. So I don't think they  
12 were out there going, come on, you guys, do this  
13 research so we can get the patents.

14 DR. EVANS: I agree with you. I think your  
15 point is well taken. I think one of the things that  
16 maybe we need to stress in the report that was not is  
17 the other incentives that exist in academia which have  
18 proven highly successful in incentivizing gene  
19 discovery, et cetera.

20 DR. LEONARD: I hate to be corny, but most  
21 of us became physicians because we cared about  
22 patients and health care and making patients better.

1 Sometimes that doesn't mean taking care of one patient  
2 at a time but it means finding better ways of curing  
3 diverse patients, which is why we do research.

4 DR. EVANS: I completely agree with you. I  
5 don't, though, want to imply from this Committee that  
6 people who go into non-academic pursuits don't have  
7 those same goals.

8 DR. LEONARD: But they do have a business  
9 model behind their activities.

10 DR. EVANS: Yes.

11 DR. ROHRBAUGH: I would like to make a  
12 comment. From Lori's side, I think it also shows how  
13 complicated this is in that her numbers showed 78  
14 percent of the DNA patents were owned by for-profit  
15 companies, only 22 percent in the non-profit  
16 community, and of those, only half designated  
17 government funding.

18 The other complexity is defining what is a  
19 DNA patent. Her study shows that there is not a good  
20 correlation between defining a definition of DNA  
21 patent and gene diagnostics, which makes it even more  
22 complicated.

1 DR. EVANS: Yes. And difficult to tease out  
2 lessons. That's right.

3 I think we have covered that slide. Next is  
4 the role of patents and licensing practices in test  
5 availability and this aggregation point that Rochelle  
6 brought up.

7 I think that it is a prima facie case that  
8 Athena's aggregation enables a single laboratory to  
9 test for many variants that contribute to a rare  
10 syndrome. I think, however, it remains an open  
11 question as to whether such licensing is necessary for  
12 aggregation testing. I think we all agree that having  
13 a single source to do the testing involved in SCA  
14 makes sense. I don't want to have to send six  
15 different tests to six different labs to get SCA  
16 testing.

17 But I think it is very much an open question  
18 as to whether that wouldn't occur anyway without  
19 exclusive licenses. In fact, if you look at HNPCC or  
20 Ehlers-Danlos syndrome, there is plenty of precedent  
21 for aggregation of tests, including what Debra has  
22 mentioned for SCA, prior to enforcing the exclusive

1 licenses for such clinical aggregation.

2 DR. LEONARD: Right. Every laboratory that  
3 was doing SCA testing practically, as new genes were  
4 discovered, were bringing online that new test. In  
5 fact, most laboratories were then going back and  
6 retesting all their patients who had been negative for  
7 the previous ones. If they found a positive, they  
8 would call the clinician and say, maybe you want to  
9 order this new test on your patient. Some labs would  
10 even give that result out for free. It depended upon  
11 the IRB approval process under which they were doing  
12 the development of the new test.

13 So it was being done in aggregate anyway,  
14 one new gene at a time.

15 DR. EVANS: That is why I added that bullet.  
16 That's right.

17 So, what is the potential for future harm.  
18 Athena's consolidation of IP-related SCA results in an  
19 effective monopoly. The enforcement of their patent  
20 rights, or their licensing rights, has been  
21 aggressive, leading several labs that might have or  
22 were offering SCA testing to avoid offering those

1 services. The lack of competition raises concerns of  
2 reduced incentive to improve testing services.

3           One clear example of hindrance to access  
4 that has come up a couple of times from clinicians,  
5 and this is something I'm hopeful that the public will  
6 flesh out as we release this draft report, is the  
7 situation in which a major third-party payer does not  
8 have a contract for whatever reason with a sole  
9 provider of a genetic test.

10           For example, MediCal, which covers a lot of  
11 people, is the state Medicaid program in California.  
12 It does not have a contract with Athena. Therefore,  
13 they can't get SCA testing done, period. It is as  
14 simple as that. There is no alternative testing  
15 available because Athena has been aggressive in  
16 limiting the ability of other labs to offer such  
17 testing. This is, I think, a clear example of  
18 hindrance and one that is a problem. Yes.

19           DR. LEONARD: Can we just change the word  
20 "several" labs? It was "many." "Several" indicates  
21 to me, one, two, or three. It was many labs that were  
22 doing SCA testing that were shut down.

1 DR. EVANS: Maybe we could find out how  
2 many. Right.

3 The next case study regards hearing loss.  
4 There has been a huge amount of interest in defining  
5 the genes that contribute to hearing loss because it  
6 is such a profound problem for toddlers and babies.

7 There have been at least 65 genes, probably  
8 more, that have been implicated in hearing loss.  
9 Mutations in five of those genes comprise a  
10 significant bulk of hearing loss cases. We have  
11 Connexin 26 and Connexin 30, as well as SLC26A4 and  
12 then these two other genes bulleted.

13 Genetic testing is available through  
14 multiple providers for those five genes listed above.

15 Three of those five genes are not patented. Those  
16 are Connexin 26, SLC26A4, and MTTSL1.

17 The test prices don't appear to correlate  
18 with patent status, as I will show you in a minute.  
19 GJB2 testing is licensed exclusively to Athena but is  
20 offered by at least 10 other providers. MTRNR1  
21 testing is licensed exclusively to Athena but is  
22 offered by six nonprofit providers.

1           So it would appear that there is a lack of  
2 enforcement at present. Clearly, there is a potential  
3 for problems if enforced. Yes.

4           DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: There are some  
5 changes that are happening for hearing loss testing  
6 that I can tell you about from experience in my own  
7 laboratory more recently.

8           There are laboratories other than Athena  
9 Diagnostics that can offer Connexin 26 testing. The  
10 reason that they have been able to offer these tests  
11 is because of another company called Third Wave  
12 Technologies that gives us a way to detect a specific  
13 mutation, Delta-35G.

14           Athena holds the rights of the patent.  
15 Third Wave has decided not to provide those reagents  
16 anymore. It provides an alternative method for  
17 detection, but my laboratory will not be able to offer  
18 this type of testing anymore.

19           DR. EVANS: Will not be able to offer it?

20           DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: Yes. Because now we  
21 have no way to address the Delta-35G.

22           DR. EVANS: Why has that transpired; do you

1 know?

2 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: There is no economic  
3 incentive for the company, I guess, to provide those  
4 reagents for those 10 laboratory providers.

5 We have developed the test. We have  
6 generated the insight or knowledge of how the testing  
7 is done and developed some of the limitations, so we  
8 can very easily talk to our providers about that. So  
9 this landscape might change very rapidly since these  
10 more recent developments.

11 DR. EVANS: Yes. I don't know if that is  
12 distillable in a paragraph, but at some point if you  
13 could shoot us a paragraph about that, that would be  
14 very valuable.

15 DR. LEONARD: This has been a very recent  
16 development. Maybe Steve could comment on the  
17 interaction between the FDA and Third Wave because it  
18 is not just this test but several tests that have  
19 stopped being offered by Third Wave, and they are  
20 affecting my laboratory as well.

21 DR. EVANS: What I'm trying to figure out  
22 here, and maybe you two can tell me, is how does this

1 interact with the patent and licensing issue. Was  
2 this a pure business decision that was independent of  
3 that or is there a reason to believe that this is  
4 meshed?

5 DR. LEONARD: No, I think your Oversight of  
6 Genetic Testing document is having an effect. I don't  
7 know if it is the effect that you want.

8 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: There is the issue  
9 that Athena holds the patent to the Connexin 26. The  
10 Delta-35G mutation is the issue here. There is no  
11 market, according to Third Wave, for them to continue.

12 First, they cannot offer this specific reagent  
13 anymore, and they decided not to go through the FDA.

14 DR. EVANS: We are focusing on patents and  
15 licensing. Whatever you can shed light on from that  
16 standpoint. I think the issue of genetic oversight,  
17 which overlaps a little bit -- and we will talk about  
18 that in a minute -- is important but is not our focus.

19 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: There is another  
20 issue that I became very acutely aware of. As you  
21 provide genetic testing services, you learn a lot  
22 about the genes and the mutations and the advantages

1 and not only continue to do research on identifying  
2 new mutations of polymorphisms but also how you  
3 implement the testing and so forth.

4           I have not seen across any of the studies  
5 what the impact is of public genetic knowledge. Some  
6 of these sole providers know a lot about how to  
7 implement the testing and the limitations of this  
8 testing, but that is not translated to the local  
9 level, where the primary care physician might have a  
10 question that is easy and more accessible to your  
11 local laboratorian, clinical professional, or  
12 laboratory professional that actually is doing the  
13 testing.

14           DR. EVANS: You maintain there is an  
15 inherent value in local testing.

16           DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: Yes. I haven't seen  
17 in any of the case studies that you have here if you  
18 have been able to look at what the impact is on public  
19 genetic knowledge.

20           DR. EVANS: We did not really look at that.

21           DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: I think that is an  
22 important issue to look at not only from the patient's

1 genetic knowledge or even the clinical provider's, but  
2 as to the testing.

3 DR. EVANS: To play devil's advocate there,  
4 I would point out that one of the things that, for  
5 example, Myriad has done is they have been  
6 extraordinarily active in contributing to the  
7 database. We have learned an immense amount about  
8 BRCA1 and -2 largely because of their willingness and  
9 efforts to do that.

10 So I think that your point is well taken.  
11 There are arguments on the other side that having  
12 large-volume labs can provide some benefits.

13 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: But the trickling  
14 down of the information of the clinical use of the  
15 tests sometimes get lost in translation, I guess. I  
16 think that has a different value to the general  
17 knowledge base of the genetic disorders. How do you  
18 actually work with a clinician or healthcare provider  
19 who has specific questions about the test? We don't  
20 have local area laboratorians with the knowledge  
21 because we don't offer the tests.

22 DR. WILLIAMS: I want to get back to the

1 first point that Andrea and Debra were bringing up so  
2 I can make sure I understand it, since I am not  
3 someone that is living this day to day.

4           It sounds to me like with the Connexin and  
5 the Delta-35G that this was, if you will, a safe  
6 harbor within the broad patent in the sense that there  
7 was something relating to detection of this specific  
8 mutation that somehow avoided the methodology of the  
9 patent that is now licensed exclusively to Athena.  
10 They weren't comprehensive enough to cover all  
11 possibilities and so this was able to be promulgated.

12           Now the situation comes about that if you  
13 are not able to use this because you are losing your  
14 ASRs or whatever, then that will default and the  
15 landscape is going to change very rapidly. That  
16 particular safe harbor is really going to disappear,  
17 not legally but because you just logistically won't be  
18 able to get the things to do it that way. Is that  
19 accurate?

20           DR. EVANS: Steve.

21           DR. TEUTSCH: It relates to this education  
22 and knowledge base. That is, if you have a patent and

1 someone has a reasonably exclusive license, there is a  
2 reason to promote it to get the value out of that. Of  
3 course, that happens in other industries.

4           To what extent do we know anything, then,  
5 about this local knowledge versus the benefits of  
6 having someone who is actually going to go out there  
7 and do that promotion to make sure that people are  
8 aware and doing it. Obviously, not everybody has a  
9 high-quality genetics expert locally.

10           DR. EVANS: Right. It is a double-edged  
11 sword. Speaking personally as a clinician, I don't  
12 typically see most of the information put out by  
13 commercial labs that do this as necessary for me to  
14 decide what tests to have done.

15           Now, that said, I happen to be immersed in  
16 genetics as a clinical geneticist. So one could argue  
17 that there is a role for laboratories to send out  
18 detail people and "educate" physicians, which could  
19 then increase the availability of that test to  
20 appropriate people.

21           The danger, of course, is that you go too  
22 far the other way and you end up actively selling the

1 test to people who don't need it and then misusing the  
2 test. It is a slippery slope.

3           In general, I would maintain -- though this  
4 is just my own opinion -- that physicians adopt  
5 typically the things they need to adopt as they  
6 practice. I am skeptical of an excessive reliance on  
7 profit-motivated education, if that makes sense.

8           DR. WILLIAMS: Again, since we are picking  
9 on one particular provider here. To the issue that  
10 you brought forward with the SCA testing and the fact  
11 that it is clinically challenging to be able to  
12 distinguish between the different types, there is  
13 another panel offered by that provider for Charcot-  
14 Marie-Tooth, where there is a great ability to be able  
15 to distinguish the different types of Charcot-Marie-  
16 Tooth based on clinical and EMG findings.

17           They still offer the panel and they detail  
18 the panel to neurologists saying the easiest thing to  
19 do is just order the panel, whereas you really can  
20 clinically say, this is the gene that I should be  
21 testing. It is a very different scenario. It might  
22 be one that would be worth contrasting.

1 DR. EVANS: That is an interesting point.  
2 Mara.

3 DR. ASPINALL: I appreciate that, Jim, as  
4 you said, it was your opinion, but I guess I would  
5 just take issue with the idea that it is profit-  
6 motivated in the same sense whether it is a  
7 university, a for-profit, or a not-for-profit. The  
8 idea is to get the information out.

9 The drug companies may be a good or bad  
10 example, but 85 percent, at least in cancer and true  
11 of virtually every area other than pediatrics, of  
12 practicing physicians don't have access to a  
13 geneticist, or community hospitals don't have the  
14 access that many people have.

15 The question in terms of judgment call is  
16 where do you draw the line. What about websites?  
17 Websites, I think many people think about as being  
18 educational. They sell as well. The number of people  
19 that are actually out there talking to physicians  
20 about these tests is relatively small.

21 I think if you look at the DTC advertising  
22 market, you could see that doctors are, quite frankly,

1 impacted, whether it is indirectly or directly through  
2 their patients. But it is an effective way to get the  
3 message out. Sometimes there is under-use and  
4 sometimes there is over-use.

5 I just didn't want to characterize it that  
6 way. Certainly they are out there to ensure that  
7 people know the tests are out there.

8 DR. EVANS: I didn't want to imply that  
9 there isn't a legitimate case to be made for the  
10 education of physicians by detail. I think you can  
11 make that case. I think it is also empirically  
12 evident that that is regularly abused and may not be  
13 the best way to educate physicians. It isn't to say  
14 that it couldn't work well. But anyway, that is a  
15 long discussion.

16 DR. ASPINALL: Maybe we could talk offline  
17 about the empirical evidence.

18 DR. EVANS: Right. Scott.

19 COL McLEAN: I just wanted to agree with  
20 Marc regarding the bundling of tests that sometimes  
21 are clinically inappropriate.

22 DR. EVANS: If we look at the price of

1 hearing loss, this was not broken down by amplicon,  
2 which is probably the best way to do it. But the  
3 genes in yellow are those genes that are not patented.  
4 The two in white are ones that are under patent and  
5 exclusive license.

6 I would just point out that, again, this  
7 recurrent theme of genetic heterogeneity is very  
8 operative here in hearing loss in that we simply can't  
9 usually tell what genes might be mutated in a child  
10 with hearing loss.

11 DR. LEONARD: Can that analysis be broken  
12 down by amplicon?

13 DR. EVANS: I'm sure it can.

14 DR. LEONARD: That is an overall price for  
15 each test?

16 DR. EVANS: It could be a misleading  
17 comparison. I don't know how many amplicons are in,  
18 say, SLC26A4.

19 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: It depends how you  
20 do the testing.

21 DR. EVANS: Shubha has something to point  
22 out. If you would come up to a microphone.

1 DR. CHANDRASEKHARAN: On the last slide, I  
2 would like to point out that not all the costs that  
3 you see are for full-sequence analysis.

4 DR. EVANS: Which one; this slide?

5 DR. CHANDRASEKHARAN: Yes. Some of those  
6 are for mutation testing.

7 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: But with Connexin  
8 26, the way 10 laboratories are approaching that -- I  
9 was going to do that -- is that you first look for the  
10 Delta-35G. If they don't have it, then you reflex to  
11 sequencing. So it will be more difficult to make the  
12 breakdown.

13 DR. CHANDRASEKHARAN: I wanted to say that  
14 for MTRNR1 and MTTTS1, the prices that you see are for  
15 mutation testing. For the rest it is full sequence  
16 analysis.

17 DR. LEONARD: Connexin 30 is full sequence?

18 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: No, it should not be  
19 full sequence.

20 DR. CHANDRASEKHARAN: It is not full  
21 sequence, no.

22 DR. LEONARD: So 26 is full sequence and

1 PDS.

2 DR. CHANDRASEKHARAN: PDS is full sequence  
3 analysis.

4 DR. LEONARD: Those are the more expensive  
5 ones. So we have to look at the method of testing.

6 DR. CHANDRASEKHARAN: That's right. We can  
7 do price-per-amplicon analysis for the ones that are  
8 full-sequence analysis.

9 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: I think it would be  
10 very interesting to see the price per amplicon because  
11 usually for Connexin 26 you should not do more than  
12 one or two amplicons.

13 DR. CHANDRASEKHARAN: That's right.  
14 Exactly. We can do that. We do have that  
15 information.

16 DR. EVANS: Yes.

17 DR. WILLIAMS: The one thing that is going  
18 to be interesting given what Debra and Andrea said is  
19 that there are a lot of us that believe that you  
20 shouldn't do Connexin 30 unless you find something in  
21 Connexin 26. If Connexin 26 is going to now be under  
22 the purview of an exclusive test, it really in some

1 ways won't matter from the convenience perspective  
2 that you raised earlier if other laboratories are  
3 available to do the Connexin 30 testing because it is  
4 not under patent.

5 DR. EVANS: In a way, that is reflective of  
6 another problem that could loom in the future, and  
7 that has to do with the holdout issue. Say there is a  
8 disease that has 11 genes associated with it. You can  
9 have the right to test for 10 of those, but if that  
10 one gene that you can't test for comprises any  
11 reasonable percentage of the cases, your inability to  
12 do that renders your panel worthless.

13 DR. STANTON: I believe several people have  
14 raised the issue of what is an appropriate measure. I  
15 would just like to put on the table that -- and Jim  
16 and I spoke about this briefly -- we need to come up  
17 with at some point some comparative index. I have  
18 been working on the mathematical model and I have run  
19 out of my own mathematical abilities.

20 But an amplicon against a societal need or a  
21 patient population needs to be balanced because  
22 Debra's point is telling. In an academic setting

1 where smaller patient populations may be present, or a  
2 specific patient may need some sort of service, versus  
3 a large-scale genetic test where there are millions of  
4 patients, those indexes may not be normalized relative  
5 to each other. We need to somehow factor that in.

6 I just wanted to bring that up because, in  
7 comparing these numbers, they are not always going to  
8 be consistent or even comparable unless we somehow  
9 normalize for patient population.

10 DR. EVANS: Great. Maybe we can work that  
11 out.

12 So, did the prospect of patents encourage  
13 the search for SCA gene-disease associations. They  
14 didn't appear to hinder research efforts in the area,  
15 nor was the prospect of patents a primary driver of  
16 the research, as concluded in this case study. Some  
17 genes and some methods were patented to preserve  
18 potential commercial interests in tests that could be  
19 developed in the future.

20 The role of patents in test  
21 commercialization. The diagnostic tests for both the  
22 patented and the unpatented genes have been developed

1 and are offered clinically by multiple providers. The  
2 conclusion of this study was the demands for testing  
3 or institutional interest in hearing loss research  
4 really were the primary factors in determining whether  
5 diagnostic testing for a particular gene was offered  
6 as a clinical service.

7           How do patents and licensing practices  
8 affect price. The cost of hearing loss tests don't  
9 appear to correlate strongly. I think the caveats  
10 that Brian brings up and the caveats that Shubha is  
11 going to address are worth looking into. I think  
12 probably that conclusion will remain, but we will see.

13           How about availability? The lack of  
14 correlation between patent status and test cost is  
15 evident, and the lack of utilization data. We really  
16 don't have data on that.

17           The potential that patents may cause some  
18 future harm in this area. The enforcement of  
19 exclusive licenses could result in reduced access.  
20 There is little doubt about that. It is unclear how  
21 patents will affect access to gene chip or microarray-  
22 based diagnostics. I think it depends on two things.

1 One is technically how that is seen from a pure  
2 infringement standpoint, but the other is how  
3 aggressively licensees choose to enforce their patent  
4 rights.

5           Again, I will keep coming back to this  
6 because I don't think we should lose sight of it.  
7 Robust sequencing, which is more and more the rule of  
8 the day, I think will present great challenges to a  
9 genetically heterogeneous disorder like this with  
10 various patent and licensing claims. Andrea.

11           DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: We have for hearing  
12 loss at least 10 providers for now. How does that  
13 compare or differ from the sole provider, where we are  
14 starting to see an issue of access for individuals  
15 that cannot pay for the testing, versus having the 10  
16 providers? Some of these are nonprofit organizations  
17 that actually might do some of the testing and have  
18 different venues to provide the testing. I don't know  
19 if you have looked into these particular issues with  
20 these two examples, BRCA1 or the SCA and the hearing  
21 loss.

22           DR. EVANS: Not per se in those terms.

1 Debra.

2 DR. LEONARD: I think looking at future  
3 potential harm, we need to bring in Marc's point, and  
4 Andrea's, that the landscape may change very abruptly  
5 if those 10 labs disappear.

6 Secondly, Connexin 30 testing shouldn't  
7 necessarily be done unless you have done Connexin 26.  
8 When that is under exclusive, sole provider status,  
9 then it also could change the landscape of how the  
10 testing is done.

11 DR. EVANS: Right. Now, moving on to  
12 hereditary hemochromatosis, this is a common autosomal  
13 recessive disorder. It has relatively low penetrance,  
14 in part dependent upon how you define "penetrance,"  
15 either from a laboratory standpoint or a clinical  
16 standpoint.

17 It results most often from mutations in the  
18 HFE gene. This is a disorder in which individuals  
19 keep too much iron. We evolved mechanisms to acquire  
20 iron from our environment because it is an  
21 extraordinarily important mineral. In fact, it is so  
22 important that we didn't evolve mechanisms to get rid

1 of iron. The only way we get rid of it is through  
2 sloughing cells in our GI tract.

3           Individuals with mutations in the HFE gene  
4 have a subtle shift in their iron balance and they  
5 retain too much iron. That iron deposition over many  
6 years can cause a variety of disorders, like diabetes,  
7 heart failure, and, probably most importantly, liver  
8 failure, cirrhosis.

9           It results most often from mutations in this  
10 one gene, HFE, and it was discovered and was patented  
11 by a start-up company in the mid 1990s. There has  
12 been an exceedingly complicated history of business  
13 transactions with who owns the patents and licensing,  
14 et cetera. Uncertainty has existed about to what  
15 extent patent rights would be enforced throughout the  
16 history of much of this story.

17           Testing is currently available through  
18 multiple providers. That was not always the case.  
19 Exclusive licensing and a single-provider model ruled  
20 for a time in the HFE history. A 2002 Nature article  
21 concluded that hemochromatosis testing had "failed the  
22 test of socially optimal access." Yes.

1 DR. LEONARD: I think in parallel to the  
2 business history, which is complex, there is a  
3 parallel scientific history of hemochromatosis  
4 testing. When it was discovered, it was thought that  
5 doing this testing may be warranted in a population  
6 screening mechanism. It has been demonstrated through  
7 very large studies that having the HFE mutation is  
8 similar to the ApoE-4. It puts you at higher risk  
9 potentially, but if you have it it is not predictive.

10 DR. EVANS: It is not determinative.

11 DR. LEONARD: Exactly. That process evolved  
12 over time in parallel with this going from exclusive  
13 to broad testing. So what happened early on is in the  
14 context of a test that we thought would be really  
15 important medically with enforcement and exclusive  
16 licensing and a single-provider model, and it became  
17 something where the science evolved and then the  
18 ability to do the test evolved.

19 DR. EVANS: Right. In a way, it intersects  
20 with the whole idea of clinical utility. I would  
21 phrase what you said as the idea that it was thought  
22 in the early days that this might have clinical

1 utility for screening populations. It has really not  
2 turned out to be the case.

3           Now, interestingly, there was a call in the  
4 Annals of Internal Medicine about three or four months  
5 ago to do basically a case-finding approach, to do  
6 limited screening of populations. So we still see  
7 recurrent calls for that type of thing.

8           But suffice it to say that, yes, in addition  
9 to the complex business history of this, there has  
10 been a complex scientific history in which it turns  
11 out that knowing somebody's mutational status can be  
12 important. It does not appear at this point, most of  
13 us would agree, applicable for the general population.

14           There are really two alterations in the HFE  
15 gene that account for the vast majority of individuals  
16 with hemochromatosis, and that is C282Y, the  
17 substitution of a tyrosine for a cystine at 282, and  
18 H63D.

19           These are specific sites that can be  
20 analyzed. You don't have to sequence the whole gene  
21 in the vast majority of cases. Methods for analyzing  
22 those mutations and a kit were patented by Mercator

1 Genetics, which was subsequently acquired by  
2 Progenitor. Other patents in the same family were  
3 issued between 2000 and 2006 and were assigned to Bio-  
4 Rad. Patents include diagnostic methods for a panel  
5 of less prevalent mutations, polypeptides related to  
6 the HFE gene, and associated proteins.

7 DR. LEONARD: Jim?

8 DR. EVANS: Yes.

9 DR. LEONARD: S63C and S65C. Because of the  
10 63 and 65, you can tell they are close together, and  
11 they have a similar impact. Is S65C patented?

12 DR. EVANS: I'm not aware that it is. I  
13 don't know. Bob, do you know? Shubha?

14 DR. COOK-DEEGAN: I shouldn't say unless I  
15 have the patent in front of me.

16 DR. EVANS: I don't know. Shubha, grab a  
17 mic.

18 DR. CHANDRASEKHARAN: There is another  
19 holder of patents. I believe it is Waltrop, Inc.,  
20 separately. It is an individual who owns patents. It  
21 is incorporated. They own two more mutations. I do  
22 not know if that includes S65C, but I do believe that

1 some companies have had to get licenses from them.  
2 Third Wave, which used to offer NESR, had to acquire  
3 licenses both from Bio-Rad and this other entity. So  
4 I believe some other mutations may also be under  
5 patent.

6 DR. EVANS: The prices for targeted testing  
7 of those two major alleles varies based on the  
8 technology used. You can see there the cost range  
9 from a subset of providers, from \$158 to \$467.

10 DR. LEONARD: I don't mean to be too  
11 detailed, but this creates a scenario where there was  
12 a company providing a test kit. So from a laboratory  
13 perspective, you had to use that test kit because they  
14 were enforcing. They only did H63D, and their test  
15 didn't take into account the S65C. You could get  
16 wrong results from a test kit that you were forced to  
17 use because of patent enforcement. It created a very  
18 bad situation for laboratories.

19 DR. EVANS: Right. Debra, I don't know  
20 technically how the public comments work, but you are  
21 a member of the public, too, right? I'm trying to  
22 write them down, but if you could summarize some of

1 these things so we can get them in the report, that  
2 would be great. Just a few bullets at some point. Do  
3 you mind?

4 DR. LEONARD: Can somebody remind me?

5 DR. EVANS: Yes. I'm jotting these down.

6 DR. LEONARD: There is also my talk that I  
7 gave, back when I was on SACGHS, at one of the very  
8 first sessions on gene patenting.

9 DR. EVANS: What I'm getting at, though, is  
10 that we have massive information. Targeted things  
11 like this will be very helpful.

12 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: I think Debra is  
13 making a very, very important point. Here we only  
14 have examples of inherited disorders. Clearly, there  
15 are other acquired somatic genetic changes related to  
16 cancer where we are forced to use specific test kits  
17 from a patent holder or licensee of the patent holder  
18 that have very questionable quality. We are not  
19 allowed to use other technologies. So this goes  
20 beyond just this point.

21 DR. EVANS: Yes. That is a very important  
22 point that we did not have in there. I want to make

1 sure we include that.

2           So, did the prospect of patents encourage  
3 search for gene-disease association. This is actually  
4 a very complex question when it comes to  
5 hemochromatosis. The prospect of patents and revenue  
6 from diagnostic testing, I think it is fair to say,  
7 probably stimulated research. It induced investment  
8 for the creation of this company, the start-up  
9 company, whose business plan centered on the  
10 identification of candidate genes for a number of  
11 diseases, including hemochromatosis.

12           This should be seen especially in the  
13 context that Debra raised of the idea which was  
14 prevalent about this time that identifying this gene  
15 might lead to reasonable calls for population-wide  
16 screening. In other words, there was thinking that  
17 this might be an extraordinarily high-volume test.

18           It is also true that three additional groups  
19 were pursuing similar approaches for hereditary  
20 hemochromatosis gene identification. Once the  
21 association was found and was published, there sprung  
22 up many laboratories developing these tests for the

1 mutations based on that original Nature genetics  
2 article. As soon as that association was discovered,  
3 there were many labs that were offering this testing  
4 because it is a relatively simple test.

5           So, how did patents and licensing practices  
6 affect price. It is really unclear how much  
7 variability in price can be attributed to the  
8 licensing issues, but the role of patents and  
9 licensing practices in test availability is more  
10 clear-cut. Patent enforcement did clearly remove  
11 preexisting competition when the patented test first  
12 appeared in the testing market. In other words, a  
13 substantial clearing of the market was engaged in.

14           At the moment, genetic testing for  
15 hemochromatosis appears to be widely available, though  
16 I think the caveat that you bring up about suboptimal  
17 testing that doesn't detect the other allele is  
18 germane to this.

19           What is the potential that patents may cause  
20 some future harm. Marc.

21           DR. WILLIAMS: I just have an issue that I  
22 will bring up before we leave hemochromatosis.

1 DR. EVANS: We are about to leave it. This  
2 case study really did not address future harm. I  
3 think this is, again, the type of thing that Debra and  
4 Andrea bring up. Marc.

5 DR. WILLIAMS: The point I was going to make  
6 was that there are analogous issues in the syndromes  
7 of iron overload to that in Alzheimer's, where there  
8 are other rare genes such as Ferritin heavy chain and  
9 the transparent receptor-2 that are much rarer and  
10 much more deterministic. So given what you did with  
11 the presenilins and APP and ApoE, you might be able to  
12 do something in this landscape that would also be  
13 analogous to that that might add value.

14 DR. EVANS: I think that is a good idea.  
15 The one thing I would add, though, is that we could  
16 research this landscape for the next 30 years,  
17 especially as it keeps moving. We could have a  
18 permanent job on the Committee. Boy, that would be  
19 fun.

20 [Laughter.]

21 DR. EVANS: But I think that with the  
22 blemishes and with things that could be assigned to

1 the future, it still is very important that we come to  
2 some conclusions here. Brian.

3 DR. STANTON: Is that second allele subject  
4 to a patent, Debra? I couldn't hear that.

5 DR. LEONARD: We don't know.

6 DR. STANTON: We don't know. So my question  
7 is, if there are alleles that are subject and others  
8 are not, and the license requires you to use a test  
9 kit, I'm trying to understand why that would preclude  
10 you from doing a separate test for the other allele.  
11 That would be a negative impact.

12 DR. LEONARD: Because you don't do a 65C by  
13 itself.

14 DR. STANTON: So it is a logistical issue.

15 DR. LEONARD: It is not clinically relevant.  
16 The H63D and S65C are much less penetrant even than  
17 the major mutation, which still is not very penetrant.

18 DR. STANTON: But you are not precluded per  
19 se from doing it? It is just not relevant.

20 DR. LEONARD: Not that I'm aware of.

21 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: I think it would  
22 increase the cost because you have to add in one more

1 test.

2 DR. EVANS: Julio.

3 DR. LICINIO: I have a question. With all  
4 of these efforts on our whole genome sequencing, there  
5 is the project for the \$1,000 genome. Very soon it  
6 may be cheaper to sequence the whole genome than to do  
7 a few of these tests. Can you sequence the genome  
8 with all these patents? That is the question.

9 DR. EVANS: I'm not a patent attorney.  
10 Maybe Rochelle should weigh in on this. If an  
11 exclusive licensee holds that license and says, we are  
12 the only ones who can test for this, we sequence the  
13 gene, that is how we do the test, I find it very  
14 difficult to imagine that they are not going to take  
15 umbrage at the idea of somebody sequencing the whole  
16 genome, which happens to include the gene that they  
17 have their whole lab based upon. I can't imagine that  
18 that wouldn't be infringement in some way.

19 DR. WILLIAMS: There is precedent in the  
20 microarray area in that some microarray companies have  
21 now been asked to remove the information that they  
22 have around the Duchenne muscular dystrophy locus

1 because there is now a patent held on looking for  
2 subtle insertions and deletions in the DMD gene that  
3 involve a high-density microarray. They are now  
4 saying you have to pull this off of your microarray  
5 chip. So I think that that is extremely analogous to  
6 the whole genome situation.

7 DR. EVANS: I think it is.

8 DR. WILLIAMS: I agree with you. I think  
9 this will become a nightmare.

10 DR. DREYFUSS: I asked the 23andMe people  
11 what they do, and they are walking a very fine line.  
12 They actually tell people that if there is a mutation  
13 that they have, that they have to then go to the  
14 company that owns the patent on the mutation to do  
15 another test, even though, I imagine, clinically the  
16 test is not required. So this is a real problem.

17 DR. EVANS: Yes, it is. I would just add  
18 that the 23andMe, Navigenics, and DeCODE situation is  
19 a little different because you are looking at SNPs and  
20 you could argue that that doesn't infringe. What I  
21 would say is that when it comes to sequencing, which  
22 is the future of this kind of analysis, it seems to me

1 a slam dunk that that is infringement.

2 DR. LEONARD: Since there is a discussion in  
3 the report on whole genome sequencing in fairly great  
4 detail, I think it would be very nice to do a cost  
5 analysis of the impossibility of ever having a \$1,000  
6 genome because of the royalties that would need to be  
7 paid on all the genes that have been patented. I  
8 think that there should be a royalty calculation for  
9 the \$1,000 genome project, even if you could do it  
10 from the perspective of the cost of the testing. It  
11 would cost you \$25,000 because of the royalty  
12 payments.

13 DR. EVANS: It seems to me that one doesn't  
14 even need to do any actual calculation. It is quite  
15 obvious that sequencing the whole genome would  
16 infringe on multiple patents. You would have to make  
17 so many assumptions in a cost analysis. I don't think  
18 we need to do a cost analysis.

19 DR. LEONARD: Maybe one sentence could be  
20 added to say that because that point I don't think is  
21 made in the report.

22 DR. EVANS: Right. Now, we are going to

1 keep going until 10:30. Then we are going to have a  
2 break, as scheduled. Then we will finish the case  
3 studies and go on from there. I think this discussion  
4 we are having is very valuable.

5           Tay-Sachs and Canavan disease. For any of  
6 you who, as a hobby, have followed the gene patent  
7 arena, you are probably salivating now because Canavan  
8 has been particularly infamous in the history of gene  
9 patenting. These are both recessive neurological  
10 conditions that are prevalent to a greater extent in  
11 the Ashkenazi Jewish population than others. HexA is  
12 the operative gene in Tay-Sachs disease, and ASPA is  
13 the gene that, when mutated, gives rise to Canavan  
14 disease.

15           DNA-based carrier screening is available for  
16 Tay-Sachs and Canavan disease. There is a highly  
17 effective enzyme test that was developed in the 1980s  
18 for Tay-Sachs and is still in use because it is an  
19 extraordinarily practical test to use. In many ways,  
20 it is actually superior to the genetic test.

21           HexA was patented by the NIH and it was  
22 never licensed. ASPA gene was patented by Miami

1 Children's Hospital, with licensing arrangements that  
2 were eventually determined by a confidential out-of-  
3 court settlement, so no one is privy to the details of  
4 the settlement. That throws up some major opacity to  
5 our analysis of this case.

6           If you look at the full sequence analysis  
7 for Tay-Sachs and Canavan, they are roughly similar.  
8 Targeted mutation analysis is almost identical. The  
9 enzyme assay, or analyte test, is again almost  
10 identical.

11           Did the prospect of patents encourage the  
12 search for gene-disease association. The prospect of  
13 patents clearly did not motivate the inventor of the  
14 genetic test for Tay-Sachs disease. She has talked  
15 about that and she has published on that very point.

16           The case study doesn't address whether  
17 Canavan researchers were motivated by the prospect of  
18 obtaining a patent, though it is fair to say that  
19 family groups were very involved in the Canavan  
20 research and were not motivated by developing and  
21 retaining a patent to any developed test.

22           The Tay-Sachs patent neither helped nor

1 hindered commercialization of the Tay-Sachs gene test.

2 The impact of Canavan patent on commercialization  
3 ultimately is unclear, in part because of the out-of-  
4 court settlement.

5 For Canavan disease testing, significant  
6 problems arose with the original licensing scheme. It  
7 imposed high fees and use restrictions capping the  
8 number of tests that could be done by a licensed  
9 laboratory. This scheme was the focus of a good deal  
10 of dismay by the Canavan community. Ultimately, an  
11 out-of-court settlement was reached that provided for  
12 more thorough testing or more available testing.

13 Regarding availability for Canavan testing,  
14 problems ruralizing did arise under that original  
15 licensing scheme, which imposed these fees and use  
16 restrictions. It, however, did not remain in place  
17 because of this legal battle and the ultimate  
18 confidential out-of-court settlement.

19 Genetic testing for Tay-Sachs is widely  
20 available. However, the biochemical test is generally  
21 preferred. That is an interesting point. Genetic  
22 testing isn't always the best way to test for

1 something. In fact, usually we do genetic testing  
2 when we don't know enough about the biochemistry of  
3 something.

4           Somebody had a comment. Debra.

5           DR. LEONARD: The Canavan case points out an  
6 interesting situation in which you can have people who  
7 are not medical practitioners enforcing medically  
8 important patents in ways that no healthcare provider  
9 would ever do. I saw versions of contracts with the  
10 University of Pennsylvania which basically banned the  
11 University of Pennsylvania from doing any Canavan  
12 testing on University of Pennsylvania patients even by  
13 sending it to another laboratory.

14           DR. EVANS: Yes. They totally shut out  
15 UPenn patients.

16           DR. LEONARD: Of course, we didn't sign a  
17 contract, but it just shows the outrageousness that  
18 can arise and actually has arisen. So it is not a  
19 theoretical or hypothetical situation. It is  
20 absolutely real and what can happen to medically  
21 important patents under the current situation, which,  
22 in my opinion -- and this is only my opinion -- should

1 not be allowed.

2 DR. EVANS: This will be a matter for the  
3 public comment, et cetera. One counter-argument to  
4 that is that this is the way these issues are  
5 resolved, and it was ultimately resolved. So one  
6 argument would be, that is why we have courts to  
7 resolve these things. That would be the one argument  
8 that is used to basically say that this was an example  
9 of the system working. It was working in a cumbersome  
10 and in an unwieldy way, but ultimately working.

11 I will just leave it at that because  
12 different people can have different takes on that,  
13 let's just say. Rochelle.

14 DR. DREYFUSS: These are not worked out in a  
15 systematic way. With Canavan, I think the family had  
16 some claim that they were the inventors of the patent,  
17 and so there was a question whether the patent would  
18 be valid since they weren't on it.

19 Each of these requires some sort of unique  
20 argument. With BRCA in Europe, there was a typo in  
21 the application. It is not like we have legal  
22 doctrines that say problems will arise and here is the

1 way that they are solved.

2 DR. EVANS: Yes. It is very ad hoc.

3 DR. DREYFUSS: Saying that you have a  
4 counter-argument is to ignore the fact that these  
5 counter-arguments are completely ad hoc.

6 DR. EVANS: I agree with you, but I think we  
7 need to try to represent the range of arguments that  
8 have been brought to bear on this.

9 So, what is the potential that the patent  
10 may cause some future harm. It is highly unlikely  
11 that the NIH will begin enforcing its patent on Tay-  
12 Sachs gene prior to its expiration in 2010. The  
13 effect of Canavan disease patents on future clinical  
14 access is hard to assess due to this closed  
15 settlement. The Canavan Disease Consortium has made a  
16 public statement that research uses are not subjected  
17 to liability for infringement, so specifically looking  
18 at research uses.

19 Let's stop here. It is 10:30. We will  
20 resume in 15 minutes, at 10:45. We will do the last  
21 two case studies and then move on.

22 [Break.]

1 DR. TEUTSCH: If folks could take their  
2 seats. I hope Paul is on the phone. His flight got  
3 canceled from the West Coast last night. He will be  
4 joining us, hopefully, later, but he has to be on the  
5 phone, and so will be heard if not seen.

6 Jim, please lead us through.

7 DR. EVANS: Let's keep plowing through this.  
8 We have this session prior to lunch and then we have  
9 two hours after lunch. I would like to devote that  
10 entire two hours to going over the range of policy  
11 options one by one.

12 We are finishing up the case studies with  
13 two interesting cases. One is cystic fibrosis, the  
14 other is Long QT syndrome. Now, CF is a recessive  
15 disorder that affects about 30,000 Americans. About  
16 one in 20 of us is a carrier for a cystic fibrosis  
17 mutation. When we inherit two of those, we have the  
18 disease. What it means is there is an overwhelming  
19 likelihood that somebody in this room carries, for  
20 example, a heterozygous mutation for CF.

21 Delta-F508 is the name of a particular  
22 mutation in the CFTR gene which is present in about 70

1 percent of cases and at least one copy. The early  
2 detection and screening for CF does, arguably, allow  
3 for better disease management, although there is no  
4 cure for CF.

5 DNA-based carrier testing and newborn  
6 screening is available and is endorsed by medical  
7 professional societies. I think 35 or 37 states, at  
8 last count, engage in CF testing as one of the newborn  
9 screening panels.

10 Patents for the CFTR gene mutation and  
11 methods for detecting those mutations are held by  
12 three entities: University of Michigan, the Hospital  
13 for Sick Children in Toronto, and Johns Hopkins, again  
14 reflecting the big role of universities in this  
15 landscape.

16 All of these patents are non-exclusively  
17 licensed. So this case study gives us a way to look  
18 at the landscape of, in biogenetic terms, a relatively  
19 common disease for which there are patents held but no  
20 exclusive licenses involved.

21 The testing price varies over the 64  
22 laboratories that offer some type of CF testing. The

1 full gene sequencing offered by a subset of those  
2 laboratories ranges from \$1,200 to \$2,500. Targeted  
3 mutational analysis -- for example, looking for the  
4 Delta-F508 gene, which in half the cases will be there  
5 in two copies, and one can employ targeted analysis --  
6 costs between \$84 and \$595.

7           That price range, however, is influenced by  
8 the fact that there are a number of different panels  
9 that one can order. One can order a panel of seven or  
10 nine mutations that are fairly common, all the way up  
11 to a panel of several dozen. Then the most exhaustive  
12 type of analysis would be full-gene sequencing.

13           With regard to whether the prospect of  
14 patents encouraged the search for gene-disease  
15 associations, it does not appear that gene patents  
16 were an important incentive for CFTR gene discovery.

17           The parties involved in commercialization,  
18 both researchers and funders, agreed to pursue patent  
19 protection so that broad access to CF genetic  
20 diagnostics could be encouraged through non-exclusive  
21 licensing strategies. In a way, my understanding is  
22 that the history of the CF patent issue is that these

1 were, in a way, preemptive patents that were taken out  
2 by the discoverers so that they could control matters  
3 and make sure that broad access was available.

4           There is no evidence that patent process  
5 affected the speed of genetic test development. There  
6 were, however, interference proceedings that weren't  
7 resolved until 2002, fairly recently in the big scheme  
8 of things considering when it was cloned.

9           How do patents and licensing practices  
10 affect price. Lab-to-lab comparisons are difficult  
11 because of this range in services. You can get whole  
12 gene sequencing. You can get a variety of different  
13 panels that look at different mutations. You could,  
14 for example, if you wanted, get precise, targeted  
15 mutation analysis as well. Andrea.

16           DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: These are practices  
17 of pricing on diagnosis for cystic fibrosis. Have you  
18 looked at the pricing for carrier screening, since  
19 there is a specific panel that has been recommended?

20           DR. EVANS: No, that is not included for  
21 carrier screening.

22           The role of patents and licensing practices

1 and the availability of this testing is pretty clear.

2 It is offered by 64 laboratories nationwide. There  
3 is no evidence to suggest that the CFTR patents and  
4 the broad licensing have limited consumer utilization.

5 With regard to future harm, development and  
6 commercialization of new tests and techniques have  
7 continued a pace. As techniques for genomic analysis  
8 have progressed, they have regularly and rapidly been  
9 applied in the context of cystic fibrosis. Broad,  
10 non-exclusive licensing practices have clearly been  
11 compatible with competition as well as innovation, as  
12 evidenced by the fact that there are 64 labs offering  
13 a variety of different products.

14 Therefore, I think it is quite fair to say  
15 that patents and licensing practices of the CFTR gene  
16 most likely will not result in future harms to CF  
17 genetic testing.

18 The last case is one that is still in flux.  
19 Hence the disclaimer. Long QT syndrome is a shifting  
20 and currently changing landscape. The authors of this  
21 case study are continuing to update the report. I  
22 don't want to imply that the conclusions or

1 interpretations in the following slides are final. We  
2 do not know the whole story when it comes to Long QT,  
3 and there seem to be surprises that regularly pop up  
4 with this situation.

5           Long QT is an interesting, from a clinical  
6 standpoint, and a tragic, from a clinical standpoint,  
7 condition. It is a mendelian condition. That is, it  
8 is inherited in a mendelian type of pattern. It  
9 affects about one in 3,000 newborns. For those of you  
10 who aren't geneticists, I can tell you from a genetics  
11 standpoint it is not rare. We are used to dealing  
12 with rare diseases.

13           There are mutations in 12 susceptibility  
14 genes that account for about 75 percent of familial  
15 Long QT syndrome. Mutations in three of those genes  
16 account for the vast majority of cases.

17           It is called Long QT because when one looks  
18 at the EKG of somebody with Long QT syndrome, under  
19 certain circumstances and at times, one of the  
20 intervals between those little blips is prolonged  
21 between the Q and the T waves.

22           Unfortunately, the EKG is not sufficient to

1 make the diagnosis in many circumstances. You can't  
2 just do an EKG and determine whether the sibling of  
3 this child who died suddenly and turned out to have  
4 Long QT syndrome is affected. It really matters  
5 clinically. If that sibling is affected, they may  
6 need an implantable defibrillator. They obviously  
7 need very close follow-up.

8           If, on the other hand, they did not inherit  
9 this condition from the parents, then they can forego  
10 screening and procedures.

11           So, clearly, this ability to diagnose Long  
12 QT is, with no hyperbole, a matter of life and death  
13 for the families in which it is being transmitted.

14           Moreover, knowing the particular mutation  
15 involved can guide therapy. There are particular  
16 genes that have a more malignant phenotype than others  
17 and necessitate the implementation of an automatic  
18 defibrillator at an earlier age, et cetera.

19           Testing is offered through Clinical Data  
20 Corporation. That is a subsidiary of PGx Health. The  
21 FAMILION Service was launched in 2004 for Long QT  
22 testing. Prior to the launch of the FAMILION Service,

1 there were at least two other fee-for-service  
2 providers of genetic testing for this syndrome,  
3 screening approximately a third of the five genes'  
4 combined coding sequence.

5           The story behind Long QT is difficult to  
6 unravel and it is still being unraveled. The majority  
7 of these genes were discovered by a researcher at the  
8 University of Utah in the '90s. The University of  
9 Utah exclusively licensed its Long QT syndrome patents  
10 to DNA Sciences for a period of several years, from  
11 '99 to 2003.

12           Then in 2003, DNA Sciences and all of its  
13 assets were purchased by Genaisance Pharmaceuticals.

14   Genaisance Pharmaceuticals launched commercial  
15 testing in 2004. In 2005, they were acquired by  
16 Clinical Data, Incorporated, a subsidiary of PGx  
17 Health. If you guys aren't lost at this point, let me  
18 know.

19           Clinical Data has since overseen the rapid  
20 growth in commercial testing for this disorder, and  
21 there has been rapid growth.

22           Testing is offered by Clinical Data

1 Corporation for \$5,400 per patent and \$900 per  
2 confirmatory test in additional family members. The  
3 cost per amplicon is \$74. That is a bit of an  
4 outlier compared to, for example, the \$38 per amplicon  
5 test of, say, BRCA.

6 Did the prospect of patents encourage the  
7 search for gene-disease associations. That prospect  
8 didn't appear to stimulate a race for gene discovery,  
9 most likely because of the relative rarity of Long QTS  
10 and the presumed small market for such genetic  
11 testing.

12 With regard to the role of patents in test  
13 commercialization, there was perceived value in the  
14 Long QTS IP as both Genaissance and Clinical Data  
15 appear to have made testing for Long QTS a substantive  
16 part of their genetic testing business plans. Both  
17 GeneDX and Boston University, however, it should be  
18 noted, offered fee-for-service testing from 2001 to  
19 2002, before patents were enforced, suggesting that IP  
20 certainly wasn't the only incentive to offer this  
21 service.

22 I think that gets back to a recurrent theme

1 that clearly patents are by no means the only reason,  
2 or even a reason, that many labs pursue such analyses.

3           So, how do patents and licensing practices  
4 affect price. The test currently costs \$5,400 per  
5 index case and \$900 to confirm that test in other  
6 family members. So you find a specific mutation in a  
7 child. Say you want to discover whether the siblings  
8 have it. It costs \$900 to look for that particular  
9 mutation.

10           It is more expensive than most comparable  
11 testing. As you will recall, BRCA confirmatory  
12 testing targeted for an individual mutation costs  
13 about half that and, on a per-amplicon basis, the  
14 initial test is also more.

15           There is incomplete coverage of the test by  
16 most payers, and the role of patents and licensing  
17 practices in test availability is hard to sort out.  
18 Enforcement actions of DNA Sciences and perhaps those  
19 of Genaissance from 2002 to 2004 may have adversely  
20 affected consumer access. There is concern that there  
21 was a period of time during which testing was not  
22 available at all due to the sole provider-enabled

1 exclusive licensing.

2           This is a serious issue with a condition  
3 that can result in sudden cardiac death and for which  
4 there is an intervention that is available if you know  
5 it. Moreover, it is difficult to diagnose, if not  
6 impossible to diagnose, without DNA analysis.

7           Clinical Data doesn't offer prenatal genetic  
8 testing for Long QT. So this gets to the more general  
9 issue of concerns about an exclusive licensee offering  
10 one genetic test but not offering another type of  
11 related test that many individuals may want. So the  
12 issue of prenatal genetic diagnosis is a complex and a  
13 somewhat controversial issue in our country as a  
14 whole, but nevertheless there are certainly people who  
15 elect to pursue prenatal testing for a host of  
16 conditions. It is up to an individual licensee  
17 whether they want to offer it or not. If they are the  
18 sole licensee, that can obviously create problems.

19           That takes us into the realm of potential  
20 future harms. To date there is no evidence that a  
21 virtual Long QTS monopoly has had a stifling effect on  
22 the development of an improved test. Oftentimes noted

1 is the exception of allelic dropout. This is a  
2 problem that is inherent to PCR-based tests. I'm not  
3 sure how unique it is to this particular situation.  
4 Andrea.

5 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: I was just curious  
6 to see if this company also has a program that allows  
7 individuals that cannot pay for that test to have  
8 access to the testing. Have you looked into that?

9 DR. EVANS: I don't know. Mara, do you  
10 know?

11 DR. ASPINALL: I don't know. We may have  
12 some representatives here who can talk to that. But  
13 again, it is the same problem. If you want to offer  
14 access to the test you need tax returns. You need to  
15 go through a major process to do it, and most patients  
16 are not able or willing to share that level of  
17 financial information.

18 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: But those who decide  
19 to do it, do they have that capability?

20 DR. TEUTSCH: I don't understand why that is  
21 the case. For drugs you don't need that level of  
22 documentation.

1 DR. ASPINALL: It is a great story. It is  
2 actually different for testing than it is for drugs.  
3 In many examples, and I know we didn't look at drugs  
4 in this instance in terms of patents, but it is an  
5 area where there is non-comparability in terms of the  
6 anti-kickback and the rule about providing services,  
7 for which the requirements are actually higher so  
8 there is no sampling technique. It may go back to a  
9 point about 10 years ago, but the challenge is very  
10 great in terms of offering this.

11 DR. EVANS: I would go on record personally  
12 as saying that I don't think the answer to our cost  
13 issues and affordability of genetic testing or, for  
14 that matter, other types of things in medicine, is  
15 really going to be solved by those kinds of programs.

16 Clinical Health has been criticized for its  
17 difficulty in processing paraffin-embedded samples  
18 from deceased individuals. I'm not sure how relevant  
19 that is personally because that is not routinely done  
20 in many situations. It is very hard to get payment.  
21 Who is going to pay for analysis of a dead person's  
22 tissue, et cetera. So I'm not sure how valid that

1 particular criticism is. It is not something that  
2 clinically is done very often.

3 DR. LEONARD: But wouldn't this be done in  
4 the setting of BRCA testing?

5 DR. EVANS: Very rarely. Very rarely.

6 DR. LEONARD: Because you always have to  
7 have the proband.

8 DR. EVANS: Yes. I would say it is almost  
9 never done.

10 So, what is the potential that this patent  
11 situation may cause some harm in the future. Clinical  
12 Health has declined to add genes to its Long QT  
13 testing panel or sublicense rights to its panel to  
14 other companies due to the rarity of mutations in the  
15 other genes. Now, they currently test for mutations  
16 in five genes, and rare mutations in seven other genes  
17 are known to predispose to this same, oftentimes  
18 clinically undifferentiable syndrome.

19 I would add this is not unique to Long QT  
20 and is unlikely to be able to be linked directly to  
21 the patent licensing issues. This is a common dilemma  
22 in clinical genetic testing. When is it worth adding

1 an assay for a gene that plays a very rare role in a  
2 disorder. So, to some extent, this dynamic is a  
3 natural result of the nature of genetic heterogeneity.

4 I think hemochromatosis is a good example of that, in  
5 which HFE is the major player but things like  
6 Ferroportin can occasionally cause a similar  
7 condition. I think this is more a nuanced issue with  
8 regard to Long QT.

9 DR. WILLIAMS: Jim, just a clarification.  
10 Does Clinical Health hold the patents on the rare  
11 genes?

12 DR. EVANS: Shubha, Bob? I think that Utah  
13 holds all the patents involved in this. What has  
14 happened, and that gets to the next point, is that  
15 there has been exclusive licensing of different loci  
16 to different licensees. There has not been, that I  
17 can make out, a really broad, coherent policy with  
18 regard to this. So I think Utah holds the patents to  
19 all these genes.

20 DR. WILLIAMS: The harm would then result  
21 from holding a patent, not developing the test, not  
22 making it easy for somebody to develop the test, and

1 then having people that literally do not have access  
2 to testing because the test is not available or being  
3 developed.

4 DR. EVANS: That is precisely where harm  
5 could come up: when you have a patent holder that has  
6 refused to license a particular gene to somebody else  
7 who, even though it is for a rare subset of that  
8 disease, might be willing to test for it.

9 DR. TEUTSCH: We might invite some comments  
10 from the audience.

11 DR. EVANS: Paul Billings, and then to Bob.  
12 Paul?

13 DR. BILLINGS: I just had two quick  
14 questions. On your slide, are Clinical Health and  
15 Clinical Data the same thing?

16 DR. EVANS: I believe so.

17 DR. BILLINGS: I think it is a mistake. I  
18 don't think it is Clinical Health.

19 DR. EVANS: It should be Clinical Data.

20 DR. BILLINGS: Yes. Clinical Health doesn't  
21 exist. You may want to correct that.

22 DR. EVANS: Yes, we do need to correct that.

1 DR. BILLINGS: Secondly, the Long QT  
2 syndrome is caused by mutations in ion channels and  
3 there are, as you say, quite a number of them. There  
4 is no evidence that we have found them all, by the  
5 way. Some of these patents are owned by the  
6 University of Utah. There may be others that are  
7 either out there that are as yet uncaptured or may be  
8 also unknown.

9 DR. EVANS: Great. Bob.

10 DR. COOK-DEEGAN: I was just going to make a  
11 technical point about what we can and what we cannot  
12 say about the intellectual property situation. It is  
13 not too hard to find patents and who was originally  
14 assigned a patent because you can get that from a  
15 public database. The crucial information that we  
16 don't have in this case, and we know that we don't  
17 have the full story, is the exclusive licensing status  
18 of some of the key common mutation patents. It has  
19 been brought to our attention that there might be a  
20 potential mutual blocking situation here.

21 DR. EVANS: Right. Lori.

22 DR. PRESSMAN: This is such a great example

1 of where diligence might be the fix that I wanted to  
2 jump in and suggest it. It has been proposed that  
3 very broad, non-exclusive licensing would be the fix  
4 because then there would be many parties who would  
5 eventually aggregate all 11. Another potential fix is  
6 more nuanced exclusivity but incentivizing their  
7 adding the additional mutations that, if they don't  
8 add, they lose rights. So, add or lose.

9 DR. EVANS: That is a good preview in the  
10 range of policy options that we present. You will see  
11 a progression. You will see a range from more and  
12 less nuanced fixes for these kinds of things that we  
13 envision.

14 DR. ROHRBAUGH: In terms of the comment Marc  
15 made, if a technology had government funding and is  
16 not being developed, that would certainly be something  
17 appropriate to consider.

18 DR. WILLIAMS: One other thing to note with  
19 this particular case study that is also unique to this  
20 case study is that this is the single case study that  
21 you have presented where there is a strong financial  
22 incentive from two other stakeholders. It is the

1 ordering physician, who is usually a cardiologist, who  
2 will presumably be able to generate revenue relating  
3 to implantation of devices, and the device  
4 manufacturers, who obviously will benefit from that.  
5 Of course, there is still a wide variety of opinions  
6 about who should get the defibrillator, ranging from  
7 everybody that carries a gene should get one just in  
8 case, to more of a selective issue.

9           But the amount of money associated with  
10 these devices and with the insertion of these devices  
11 is not trivial and in fact dwarfs the cost of the  
12 genetic test.

13           DR. EVANS: That is a very good point. That  
14 is a very interesting point. Mara.

15           DR. ASPINALL: Two comments, one to Marc's  
16 comment. I'm not familiar with the medical history  
17 there, but just because there is a financial incentive  
18 on people's part doesn't mean they do the wrong thing.  
19 The implication there is how that works through the  
20 system.

21           DR. WILLIAMS: No, I understand that. One  
22 of the things that we have frequently argued to peers

1 about is that for the vast majority of genetic tests  
2 that we are ordering there is no personal financial  
3 incentive for ordering a test or not ordering a test.

4 It really is for the patient. This is not the case  
5 with this particular test, and that is something that  
6 could in fact promote a broader use of testing that  
7 might be defined as inappropriate.

8 DR. EVANS: It is an interesting issue.

9 DR. ASPINALL: Fair enough. I think that,  
10 more broadly, testing is probably the one area that  
11 there is no financial incentive broadly. In drugs  
12 there is an incentive. On devices there is an  
13 incentive to go back. But that is the fundamental  
14 basis of our system. Virtually all of the other  
15 interactions have some financial incentive for the  
16 ordering physician or the institution. That was Point  
17 No. 1.

18 Point No. 2, first let me say thank you for  
19 your presentation and giving it in such a broad, open-  
20 minded way, looking at the various issues with all of  
21 the questions. I think the way that it was put  
22 together was very helpful.

1           One of the things, though, that I would  
2 suggest -- and I know we talked about it a little bit  
3 in the Committee -- as we move forward with the case  
4 studies, is with that last question, do patents have  
5 the potential for future harm, we should also have the  
6 potential that the patent has future benefits. We had  
7 talked about it at one point but it seems to have  
8 gotten lost in there.

9           The Long QT one is an example. Earlier we  
10 spoke about the role of the people in the field going  
11 out. In this case, we talk about the fact that,  
12 without education of physicians, many physicians are  
13 not aware of this, much less have an interest in doing  
14 it. I think that is there now. Right now we are  
15 laying out the situation. There are some that work  
16 one way and some that work another. I think we need  
17 to ask the question both ways.

18           DR. EVANS: I think that is a point very  
19 well taken. Alan.

20           DR. GUTTMACHER: I would just like to  
21 quickly add, I think the example of the financial  
22 interest in the Long QT syndrome is a very

1 illustrative and important one. I would also point  
2 out, though, that even for other testing there may be  
3 a financial implication. That is, people tend to like  
4 and refer to physicians whom they perceive as doing  
5 something. That is the reason why people often write  
6 scripts at the end of an exam, to make the patient  
7 feel like you have done something.

8           For many folks in genetics particularly  
9 perhaps, ordering a test is doing something. I think  
10 that there may be a less overt, more subtle, but still  
11 somewhat of an economic interest in doing something.

12           DR. EVANS: That is a good point. Even  
13 BRCA1 and -2, you find a mutation in somebody and they  
14 have bilateral mastectomies. We are talking about a  
15 major financial incentive from that perspective.

16           DR. ASPINALL: I think that that is a very  
17 fair point, but typically you hear from physicians  
18 that, the time to do the test, send it out, interpret  
19 the test, speak to the patient about it, forget even  
20 genetic counseling, often none of that is being paid  
21 for. So the incentive may be to do something, but the  
22 actual time it takes to go through that is actually a

1 loss rather than a gain.

2 DR. GUTTMACHER: Medical genetics is based  
3 upon losing money on each client you see and somehow  
4 making it up in volume.

5 DR. EVANS: In "Catch-22," Milo Minderbinder  
6 says, "I lose money on every sale. It's just the  
7 volume that keeps me in business." I never understood  
8 that comment until I got involved in medicine, and it  
9 is exactly right. We lose money on every sale. It's  
10 just that because we are perceived as being needed and  
11 people demand it, we somehow survive.

12 DR. ASPINALL: The perception of that  
13 changes a little bit for those in medical genetics,  
14 for whom it is done, but the vast majority are done by  
15 non-geneticists.

16 DR. EVANS: We are going to try to march  
17 through preliminary conclusions that we have made in  
18 going through this.

19 Now, I would emphasize what we have tried to  
20 do here is, among the task force in these grueling  
21 conference calls, come up with some of the lessons  
22 learned and the preliminary conclusions that we can

1 make. I do not want to imply that these are the only  
2 lessons that one could learn. We are trying to  
3 present a balanced type of set of conclusions.

4 I would start out by saying that it is not  
5 so much whether a genetic diagnostic test is patented  
6 or unpatented, but rather, how the patents are used  
7 and enforced that result in potential barriers to  
8 clinical access. I think that a good example of that  
9 is something like CF. CF has broad access. It is  
10 patented. It has been how that patent is used that  
11 has allowed for such broad access.

12 The findings from the case studies suggest  
13 that it is this use and enforcement of IP rights that  
14 ultimately affect access.

15 Controversies are most likely to occur when  
16 the interests of medical practitioners and patients  
17 aren't taken into consideration during license  
18 processes and when exclusive licenses are issued. I  
19 think that is pretty clear. It is in those realms of  
20 exclusive licensing that we run into problems. It is  
21 in realms like Canavan where there was a disconnect  
22 between the patients, their families, and the

1 individuals who were setting policy with regard to the  
2 use of those patents.

3 I think that it is surprising but  
4 demonstrable that there is no clear relationship  
5 between patents, license exclusivity, and the price of  
6 a genetic diagnostic test. The evidence from the case  
7 studies don't reveal any exorbitant patent premium or,  
8 for that matter, they don't even reveal a patent  
9 premium for most of these genetic tests that were  
10 patented and even exclusively licensed relative to  
11 tests that were either unpatented or non-exclusively  
12 licensed. This was a surprise to me, but I think it  
13 is relatively uncontrovertible from the analysis when  
14 you look at things like price per amplicon. It is  
15 surprising, but I think it is true.

16 Now, why is that. I don't know. It could  
17 be because of third-party payers. It could be because  
18 of the quest for volume in lieu of price per test.  
19 Andrea.

20 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: I think some of the  
21 testing that you looked at to compare the pricing were  
22 sequencing tests. There are not that many providers,

1 so there is no significant amount of competition among  
2 laboratories to be looking at price changes.

3           The third one is the third-party payers.  
4 They act as kind of regulators. They decide how much  
5 they are going to pay.

6           DR. EVANS: To me, that is probably what  
7 answers that question.

8           DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: But again, if you  
9 have, for example, more laboratories competing for the  
10 sequencing, maybe the prices might go down. We have  
11 seen from \$76 for some of the testing down to \$48.

12           DR. EVANS: But those aren't clearly related  
13 to the patent status.

14           DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: But I think you may  
15 need to see the number of laboratories that are  
16 offering the tests.

17           DR. EVANS: But we see a lot of laboratories  
18 in many of these situations that do offer testing.  
19 Look at HNPCC. Look at CF.

20           DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: CF is different.

21           DR. EVANS: I think you are right about the  
22 etiology of this, that it most likely relates to

1 third-party payment, to CMS, et cetera. But for  
2 whatever reason, we don't see a big patent premium.

3 DR. WILLIAMS: I think one of the nuances  
4 relating to third-party payers is that you may also  
5 find differences in laboratories depending on whether  
6 or not they will accept specimens from Medicare and  
7 Medicaid. A laboratory that takes all comers will  
8 charge a higher per-test price because they know they  
9 are going to be losing money on those payers because  
10 of the current payment structure, which we will go  
11 into ad nauseam on the coverage and reimbursement  
12 side, or have already done that.

13 But if you, as some do, don't accept those  
14 payers or you just say, we are going to bill the  
15 referring laboratory or the institution and not bill a  
16 third-party payer, you can afford to charge less if  
17 you are getting dollar per dollar as opposed to  
18 looking at a discount where you have to build that  
19 into your price structure.

20 Looking at the test price has so many  
21 variables associated with it that, while I don't  
22 disagree with your conclusion, I think that we

1 shouldn't necessarily be so sanguine, either.

2 DR. EVANS: To be honest with you, I think  
3 it is hard to disagree with this conclusion. The  
4 facts are the facts. There doesn't seem to be a  
5 relationship. I think the reason for that is complex.

6 DR. ASPINALL: Patent holders range from  
7 for-profit, not-for-profit, universities, and  
8 individuals. So there is no "they" that are all one  
9 type. To me, it is not surprising. It is like any  
10 other piece. If you look at drugs or if you look at  
11 services, the relative prices and margins vary,  
12 period.

13 DR. EVANS: Thus far, there is no strong  
14 evidence of large-scale and long-term barriers to  
15 clinical access to genetic tests within the current  
16 gene patenting and licensing landscape. Case studies  
17 do document several instances in which access to  
18 genetic tests may have been impeded due to a sole  
19 provider not offering a test for a period of time,  
20 disagreement regarding test cost and royalty payments,  
21 inability to combine services for testing multiple  
22 mutations, and this problem that arises when there

1 isn't a contract between a sole provider and a major  
2 payer.

3 I want you to pay attention to the nuanced  
4 nature of this statement. What we are trying to say  
5 is that there are not strong, large-scale, long-term  
6 barriers that have arisen due to the patents  
7 landscape. At this point, while there have been  
8 problems and while there are problems, I think it is  
9 also fair to say that in most cases genetic testing is  
10 available at what appear to be reasonable prices for  
11 most things. Yes.

12 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: I think it is a very  
13 strong statement here. It might be that we are  
14 lacking some of the information. Some of your case  
15 studies are of limited nature. So I think we have to  
16 be careful with that strong statement that there is no  
17 strong evidence. I don't think we have enough data.

18 At the annual meeting of the Association for  
19 Molecular Pathology, there was very nice work  
20 presented where patients at Louisiana State University  
21 were not able to get access to BRCA1 mutations even  
22 though they had very strong positive clinical

1 information.

2 DR. EVANS: Right. I'm going to say two  
3 things. Where you lay the blame for that lack of  
4 access is important. I completely agree with you that  
5 the field is opaque, that the absence of evidence is  
6 not evidence of absence. I think that is a very  
7 important point that we will get to in a minute. Bear  
8 with me because I think we address some of that real  
9 soon.

10 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: I'm sorry to keep  
11 coming back to the BRCA1 mutation, but I think if you  
12 had more providers that could offer that test we might  
13 have access to that.

14 DR. EVANS: Andrea, that isn't borne out by  
15 what I think is probably one of the strongest case  
16 studies, when you compare colon cancer and BRCA.

17 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: In colon cancer you  
18 have more people offering the test, some of which are  
19 nonprofits.

20 DR. EVANS: Right. But they cost the same.

21 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: They cost the same,  
22 but I'm not talking about the cost. I mean the access

1 to a group that cannot afford the testing.

2 DR. EVANS: Bear with me. Again, these are  
3 nuanced. I'm not trying to say there are no problems.

4 What I'm trying to say is there is not a pervasive,  
5 huge problem and people are generally able to get  
6 tests. But I think that has to be countered by this  
7 following slide.

8 There is an important typo that was  
9 corrected in this. Your hard copies do not reflect  
10 this very important "no" in the first line.

11 At the same time, there is also no evidence  
12 that gene patents and exclusive licensing practices  
13 provide powerful incentives for the development or  
14 availability of genetic diagnostic tests.

15 In contrast to the situation for the  
16 development of therapeutics, the threshold for  
17 developing diagnostics is low. Clinical need and  
18 academic interests serve as the predominant drivers  
19 for the development of genetic tests. It is evident  
20 that in most cases diagnostic tests are quickly  
21 offered without the need for patents or exclusive  
22 licensing. You can look at CF, hemochromatosis, BRCA,

1 Ehlers-Danlos syndrome. You could go on and on.

2           The incentive structure could change as the  
3 regulatory environment for genetic tests evolves.  
4 That is something we have to keep in mind. But  
5 patenting does not seem to be required for driving  
6 discovery of genetic associations or the proliferation  
7 of clinical laboratories which offer a given test.

8           I think, as we will get to in a minute, this  
9 is a very important point. One has to think about  
10 what the purpose of patents and licensing is. People  
11 can differ about what those purposes are. But if the  
12 purpose is to have tests available and to promote  
13 innovation, it is arguable that we have uncovered no  
14 evidence that suggests that exclusive licenses and  
15 patents are necessary. Yes.

16           DR. ASPINALL: If you would go back? I'm  
17 not sure it changes the conclusion, but you say "The  
18 threshold for developing diagnostics is low." I think  
19 it is important to, at a minimum, say "is lower than  
20 therapeutics." But it is increasingly changing.  
21 Several companies have spent in the tens of millions  
22 of dollars. One spent \$100 million. Is that a

1 billion dollars? No. But the relative benefit is not  
2 like it once was or like it is perceived and  
3 portrayed.

4 DR. EVANS: Right. That is why that third  
5 sub-bullet, I think, is important. We can talk about  
6 that more as we get into the various policy options.  
7 I think the incentive structure could definitely  
8 change with regulatory requirements.

9 I do think that the phenomenon of clearing  
10 the market, which has occurred so many times in the  
11 history of gene patents and licensing, is empirically  
12 instructive to us. What it tells us, I think, in no  
13 uncertain terms is that tests get developed. We find  
14 an association and entities that do not have deep  
15 pockets -- clinical labs and academic environments --  
16 quickly fill the gap and start offering testing. Then  
17 what exclusive licenses do is they clear the market.

18 I think when that happens over and over it  
19 is telling you something important. It is telling you  
20 that you don't really need incentivization to get  
21 these tests out there.

22 DR. ASPINALL: That may or may not be true.

1 I guess I'm making a different point. Regardless, if  
2 the incentives don't change today and they don't  
3 change in the future, the first statement about the  
4 cost for developing diagnostics is rapidly changing  
5 and some would say already has changed.

6 DR. EVANS: That is why Sub-bullet No. 3 is  
7 there.

8 DR. ASPINALL: I'm saying it is not related  
9 to the incentive structure. If the incentive  
10 structure never changes, the hurdle to make a  
11 diagnostic that is clinically accepted today is  
12 changing or has already changed. I think if you look  
13 at the IVDMIAs that are on the market and what is  
14 public information, it is tens of millions to do that.  
15 So the third point may also change that, but it is a  
16 separate issue because today the incentive is what it  
17 is.

18 DR. EVANS: That makes sense.

19 DR. ROHRBAUGH: Jim, I think that is a  
20 strong statement in that there hasn't been a look at  
21 the null set. What is the negative. What is not  
22 being developed adequately because it is not being

1 patented and licensed in this way. By selecting  
2 examples of products that are developed, it is a  
3 selective set and not looking at the null set.

4           Also, there may not be a powerful incentive,  
5 but I think there are those who would agree that there  
6 is an incentive. I certainly know of companies who  
7 would say, we are not going to spend several million  
8 dollars even on certain clinical studies if there  
9 isn't some degree of exclusivity.

10           DR. EVANS: That is, again, why I think of  
11 these two slides as a spectrum. I think that there  
12 has been disagreement with both of these slides, which  
13 is exactly what we wanted, because they present the  
14 strongest statement of both sides. I think the  
15 reality of these situations is nuanced.

16           DR. WILLIAMS: The point I would make to  
17 John's reference to the null set is that were there  
18 not issues relating to that, particularly in the rare  
19 disease area or the ultra rare disease area, we  
20 wouldn't be investing in something like a SEP program  
21 through CDC to try and bring some of these tests to  
22 the market.

1           So, at least in the ultra rare disease  
2 community, there are definitely some places where  
3 incentives would be necessary to bring that in.  
4 Perhaps you could argue that patenting is not an  
5 adequate incentive to bring those forward just because  
6 of the volume.

7           DR. EVANS: Yes, Lori.

8           DR. PRESSMAN: I would just ask Bob and  
9 Shubha a question about Myriad. I thought there was  
10 some suggestion in some of the phone calls that there  
11 has been desirable behavior at Myriad where they  
12 correlate genotype to phenotype. Do you think that  
13 that in any way was incentivized by their position? I  
14 guess, could some exclusivity further incentivize such  
15 clinical utility?

16           DR. EVANS: That is an interesting question.  
17 I don't know. Bob, Shubha, do you have any insight  
18 into that?

19           DR. COOK-DEEGAN: I don't know how to answer  
20 the question about whether patents are related to  
21 that. It is clear that Myriad did that. It is also  
22 clear that it is not a universal finding for all of

1 our case studies. So I don't know what to make of  
2 that. It is cool that they do it. Is it related to  
3 the fact that they are the sole provider? I think it  
4 probably is related in some ways. I think it is also  
5 related to the constituency community they are dealing  
6 with and all sorts of other variables.

7 DR. EVANS: I think that it is instructive  
8 to think for yourself about what do you feel the  
9 purpose of patents and licensing is. I think this is,  
10 arguably, a question that reasonable people will  
11 differ on. But the answer to that question is  
12 incredibly important in how we go forward in crafting  
13 policy. It gets to this.

14 Are patents and, for that matter, exclusive  
15 licenses an inherent right? Is it that we should be  
16 able to have these patents and these exclusive  
17 licenses as a value in and of themselves, or do they  
18 exist as a tool to achieve some other, positive goal?

19 I think that is important because it all  
20 turns the threshold of action. If one says that they  
21 need to accomplish a goal, then that second slide that  
22 says, it doesn't seem that there is a lot of need for

1 these things, weighs very heavily. If one feels that  
2 patents and exclusive licenses are an inherent right,  
3 then that first slide that says, there aren't huge  
4 problems, rises to a greater significance. Rochelle.

5 DR. DREYFUSS: I didn't chime in earlier  
6 when you talked about the goals of patent law. You  
7 did put in this notion that people have an inherent  
8 right or a moral right to patents. I would say that  
9 is an odd statement about American law. I don't think  
10 American law recognizes a moral right to intellectual  
11 property.

12 DR. EVANS: So, the Natural Rights argument  
13 that people discuss?

14 DR. DREYFUSS: The Natural Rights argument,  
15 to the extent it exists, mostly exists for copyrighted  
16 works or where a piece of a your personality is  
17 involved. But even that is more a statement of  
18 European or civil law intellectual property, not  
19 American law intellectual property.

20 In fact, I would say it is quite the  
21 opposite. Thomas Jefferson, who was in some ways the  
22 founder of the patent system, was very skeptical about

1 the idea of needing intellectual property rights at  
2 all. He has a letter in which he talks about the fact  
3 that if I have a candle and I light yours, I have not  
4 diminished my own fire. I have only added more to the  
5 world.

6           So, if anything, that moral claim goes the  
7 other way in American law. Ideas are things that  
8 should be shared if there is no special utilitarian  
9 right to keep it not shared. The copyright clause  
10 which you put up on the board is purely utilitarian,  
11 to provide for the progress of science.

12           DR. EVANS: That is exactly what I was going  
13 to go back to. The U.S. Constitution is totally  
14 utilitarian in its context. It says "to promote the  
15 advance of arts and sciences." It says nothing about  
16 inherent rights. I think that is important.

17           DR. DREYFUSS: The notion that a state could  
18 create its own patent rights, that has completely been  
19 quashed by the Supreme Court.

20           DR. EVANS: Kevin and then Mara. Kevin.

21           DR. FITZGERALD: I don't want to juxtapose  
22 European law and tradition versus American because I

1 think in the European law tradition you would get a  
2 different sense of that. But I don't think you have  
3 to set this up as an either/or. This can be a  
4 both/and. One doesn't necessarily have to have an  
5 exclusive natural rights framework. One could argue  
6 natural rights within a larger framework, which I  
7 think is what they do in the European tradition. So  
8 it would be seen as a both/and.

9 DR. EVANS: This comes from your own  
10 Kantian/Mill type of thing. Mara.

11 DR. ASPINALL: On this philosophical issue,  
12 the only thing that I would add is, my understanding  
13 of it is that is why there are time limits. Time  
14 limits are the balance in patents. Whether you call  
15 it a right or a privilege that is owned, that means  
16 that you have it for a certain period of time and then  
17 it is broadly open. That time period was put in place  
18 and recently revised in the U.S. and internationally  
19 to be able to say reward but then step away and ensure  
20 broad access.

21 DR. EVANS: The second bullet, how does  
22 patenting and health care differ from patenting in

1 purely commercial arenas. I think this is also  
2 germane to what kinds of policy recommendations we  
3 ultimately come up with. Is health care the same as a  
4 widget, to use the economic jargon. I would maintain  
5 that no, it isn't, that there are other important  
6 considerations in health care.

7           I think that that is demonstrable that we  
8 hold different views about health care. We have  
9 examples like the Ganske-Frist bill, which implies, I  
10 think, quite clearly that we separate healthcare  
11 issues when it comes to patents and licensing in some  
12 ways from more purely commercial arenas. I think  
13 that, again, these are important things for us to  
14 think about as we go forward with a possible policy  
15 range.

16           Is the patenting of diagnostics inherently  
17 different from other uses of patents. Since  
18 diagnostics elucidate something about an individual,  
19 is it relevant to ask whether discovering that  
20 information through a diagnostic test should be  
21 treated differently or should be controlled in some  
22 manner. I think those are, again, reasonable things

1 to take into account. I think people will differ on  
2 those.

3           Maybe, Rochelle, this is a good time for you  
4 to speak. We had a conversation at the break about my  
5 statement at the start that patents of genes are a  
6 fact in every jurisdiction that has looked at it.  
7 Rochelle countered I think really instructively.

8           DR. DREYFUSS: I think the notion that genes  
9 are patentable is very heavily dependent on this idea  
10 that what you are doing is isolating something from  
11 nature and purifying it. Those are the cases that you  
12 cited. They were all cases where you isolated and  
13 purified something, so a great deal of human  
14 intervention was required and that made something  
15 different in kind from what was in nature.

16           Now, all of those cases are about  
17 therapeutics. They are about actually purifying  
18 something and then you have a nice little liver pill  
19 or whatever that you then swallow. It is the isolated  
20 substance which is the thing that is commercially  
21 valuable and the thing that the patent protects.

22           When you are talking about DNA, you are

1 sometimes talking about the same things, perhaps.  
2 There might be some therapeutics that you do with DNA.  
3 But in actual fact, the isolation and purification of  
4 it is not the commercially valuable thing. It is the  
5 information content of it that is commercially  
6 valuable. When you are talking about diagnostics,  
7 that is what you are talking about: utilizing the  
8 information content, not utilizing the purified  
9 version of the DNA sequence or whatever.

10 We really haven't had any cases on the  
11 question whether that itself is patentable. The  
12 Supreme Court has recently, in two cases about things  
13 that are quite different, hinted that pure information  
14 may not be something that is patentable.

15 So one question here is whether or not the  
16 information content is patentable or just the actual  
17 substance. A related way of thinking about it is,  
18 even if you get a patent on the DNA, what is going to  
19 be considered infringement. Is use of the knowledge  
20 going to be considered infringement.

21 I think there is some real question at this  
22 point based on a couple of Supreme Court cases and

1 based on a federal circuit case about how far the  
2 patents on this stuff actually go.

3 DR. EVANS: I think that is a really  
4 interesting issue. One thing that we need to keep in  
5 mind is that our power as an advisory committee to the  
6 Secretary lies in making concrete recommendations.  
7 Those issues will be decided by the courts and they  
8 are out of our control.

9 DR. FITZGERALD: I also think Rochelle makes  
10 a good point. I thought the Metabolife case indicated  
11 the opposite.

12 DR. EVANS: Could we actually wait on the  
13 Metabolife case? Because we are going to talk about  
14 associations.

15 DR. FITZGERALD: Oh, you are. Okay.

16 DR. DREYFUSS: I guess I disagree about  
17 that. You like evidence-based medicine. I agree when  
18 I'm a patient that that is the way I would like to be  
19 treated. But law doesn't always work quite that way.  
20 Law works on looking at the pros and cons of  
21 different positions. Is the potential harm greatest  
22 this way or greatest this way.

1           So this kind of data, these case studies  
2 that Bob worked on and the conclusions of this  
3 Committee, could weigh very heavily for a court.  
4 Bracketing this when it is really an issue that is  
5 very much at the forefront right now seems to me to be  
6 a mistake.

7           DR. ROHRBAUGH: Jim, I think there are also  
8 a lot of other patents that one could imagine and that  
9 exist around diagnostics, not just DNA. You mentioned  
10 biological and biochemical assays as well. There are  
11 formats and other kinds of things.

12           We are also in a time period of a bolus of  
13 DNA patents that will eventually expire. Perhaps the  
14 number of new DNA patents is diminishing and  
15 ultimately will come to an end, and so we will be  
16 dealing with a different set of patents with respect  
17 to diagnostics and their framework and also in light  
18 of the judicial and statutory interpretation of  
19 utility and all these other cases.

20           So it is a period in time looking at DNA.  
21 Patents issued, many times, long ago and were licensed  
22 in the past, and we are looking at the consequences

1 today. What happens today will be different in the  
2 future.

3 DR. EVANS: Debra.

4 DR. LEONARD: The committee also looked at  
5 international perspectives. Bob and I were talking  
6 this morning that it is not only Ganske-Frist. Bob  
7 knows this better than I, but Belgium and France also  
8 have diagnostic exemptions. So the Ganske-Frist type  
9 of concept of accepting healthcare practice from  
10 patent infringement lawsuits includes diagnostics  
11 there where we excluded those. So there is precedent  
12 internationally for this kind of thing.

13 DR. EVANS: Absolutely. They include  
14 diagnostics in that kind of exemption.

15 Moving on with preliminary conclusions, the  
16 regulation of IP rights may not necessarily be the  
17 optimal primary point of action for resolving problems  
18 regarding quality of genetic testing. We put this in  
19 here because frequently as you read about the  
20 controversies regarding gene patents and licensing the  
21 perceived and potential detriment to quality is  
22 brought up.

1           The argument is made, reasonably, that  
2 perhaps with a sole-source provider one is unable to  
3 have the kinds of quality control that are inherent  
4 when there is competition. This was touched upon by  
5 Recommendation No. 13 in the NRC report regarding  
6 verification.

7           What I would argue and what I think came out  
8 of our task force discussions is that intellectual  
9 property rights and their application are in some ways  
10 a peripheral matter with regard to quality. They  
11 perhaps are not the best place to focus if one is  
12 concerned about quality. Issues related to quality  
13 are perhaps better assessed through mechanisms that  
14 address quality instead of trying to do it in a  
15 roundabout way.

16           I think that this Committee has weighed in  
17 on it. It is a complex issue. But I'm not sure, and  
18 I think that the sense of the task force was, that  
19 quality perhaps takes our eye off the ball and isn't  
20 so much an IP issue. What people do have to say to  
21 that?

22           DR. WILLIAMS: Yes. The other way of

1 stating that would be to say if we had a robust  
2 oversight of genetic testing quality and practice, I  
3 don't think this issue would arise within the context  
4 of a patent discussion. I would agree with you that I  
5 think that the quality issue is a very poor lever to  
6 try and say we shouldn't have patents. It really is  
7 reflective of another problem in the system. We have  
8 addressed it, and I think you are right on.

9 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: I think there are  
10 two different issues on the quality where you have  
11 external proficiency or alternative assessments for  
12 performance and quality. What I'm concerned about  
13 here is something that we discussed earlier for  
14 hemochromatosis where the design of the assay was  
15 limited because of the patent.

16 DR. EVANS: But that is not a quality issue.  
17 That is an exclusion of ability to test issue.

18 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: It plays into the  
19 ability to identify the disorder.

20 DR. EVANS: I think we are using "quality"  
21 in different senses here. I'm talking about quality  
22 as in does this test do what it says it does, is it

1 robust enough to detect, et cetera. That is a  
2 different issue than, we can't test for this condition  
3 because it is under exclusive license.

4 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: But if you are going  
5 to use a test to detect specific disorders and you are  
6 not allowed to add another mutation that would allow  
7 you to really detect the disorder, it is an issue of  
8 quality.

9 DR. EVANS: I disagree. I don't think for  
10 these purposes we want to broaden quality in that way.  
11 I think that is an issue of can you test for this  
12 allele.

13 I think when we talk about quality maybe  
14 what we need to do is define quality in a more precise  
15 way for this.

16 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: I'm going to go back  
17 to this specific issue because it is not the quality  
18 of actual analytic validity. I'm okay with that. But  
19 you might be missing the issue.

20 DR. EVANS: Right, right. What I'm getting  
21 here too is mainly analytic validity issues. That is  
22 a great way to think about it. Thank you.

1           The field of genetic testing is rapidly  
2 evolving and the existing landscape of patents and  
3 exclusive licenses might cause significant problems in  
4 the future. I think there are a few things we can  
5 probably all agree on. Imagine that.

6           Most diseases with a genetic component are  
7 genetically heterogeneous, which necessitates  
8 multiplex testing. This is not up for argument.

9           Technology is rapidly moving towards the  
10 ability to engage in robust, deep genomic analysis.  
11 Here is where the interpretation comes in. I think  
12 that patent thickets may become more of a logistical  
13 problem as multiplex testing increases.

14           This seems to be rather obvious to me.  
15 Maybe other people want to argue with me on it, but it  
16 seems to me that, as you test more and more genes, if  
17 some of those genes are exclusively licensed or  
18 patents are held and not licensed, you have a problem.

19           I think what is really looming is this issue  
20 of sequence analysis, which will materialize. I think  
21 that you can argue about whether it will be three  
22 years or 10 years, but I think most of us agree it is

1 going to happen. It is very hard for me to envision  
2 this not being a serious challenge to the current  
3 system of patents on individual genes and exclusive  
4 licenses.

5 I knew Brian would raise his hand. Brian.

6 DR. STANTON: I'm just going to ask two  
7 questions, rather than make a statement. The question  
8 of patent thickets, the examples of the 802.1N, the  
9 new network standard that has been preliminary  
10 forever, could be considered a patent thicket. The  
11 DBD standards could be considered a patent thicket  
12 where standards of patent pools came up.

13 My question would be, I don't know whether  
14 there is evidence of patent thickets occurring. If  
15 there are, the community, or at least the commercial  
16 community, doesn't know how to deal with them. So I  
17 think that there is a potential issue, but I'm not  
18 sure that the solutions are not in the toolbox.

19 DR. EVANS: Right. I think that is very  
20 fair. This is a concern that I think may arise in the  
21 future. Now, whether the remedies currently exist to  
22 get around them or not, I don't know. I'm skeptical,

1 but there are people who know a lot more about the  
2 patent system than I do. So I would love to hear how  
3 they are going to get around that.

4 Kevin is next.

5 DR. FITZGERALD: Just on that note, if I  
6 remember correctly, somebody brought up a similar kind  
7 of example talking about the HD TV. There were 1,100  
8 different patents and everybody gets their little  
9 piece. I thought that was brought up as an example.

10 DR. EVANS: I think it was in software.  
11 Software development is an example of where there has  
12 been great potential for this. I think as we get into  
13 the policy recommendations that we have to look  
14 closely at other models that might get around that.

15 Who is next? Rochelle is next.

16 DR. DREYFUSS: I wouldn't draw too much  
17 happiness from these other examples.

18 [Laughter.]

19 DR. DREYFUSS: Think about the DVD, for  
20 example, or the HDTV. You have a patent on a tiny  
21 piece. You have no product unless you agree with  
22 everybody else. Nothing comes out unless everybody

1 agrees. But if you have a patent on a gene, you can  
2 still market your test. There is absolutely no need  
3 to agree with everybody else because you can still go  
4 out there and market.

5           Now, there might be good reasons to want to  
6 agree, but you are not driven to it in the way that  
7 you are all in all of these other examples. That has  
8 been the problem in agriculture, where there are some  
9 places where you are seeing some of these pools. But  
10 the pools are much harder to create because of the  
11 fact that people can make money even if they are  
12 outside the pool. You don't need everybody else to  
13 market a genetic test.

14           DR. EVANS: Incentivizing a pool is very  
15 difficult in this context.

16           DR. DREYFUSS: It is completely different.

17           DR. FITZGERALD: On that note, I agree that  
18 is an issue that we have to look at. However, as you  
19 talk about moving ahead to the \$1,000 genome, and we  
20 are also keeping personalized medicine out there as  
21 the horizon toward which we are moving, when we get a  
22 greater sense of what is out there in the "healthy"

1 population, my guess is the relative simplicity with  
2 which we look at some of these supposed deterministic  
3 genetic conditions is going to become a lot less  
4 deterministic.

5           So even if somebody does have a patent even  
6 on the CAG repeats in Huntington's, we may discover in  
7 the population that there are people sitting out there  
8 with 42 or 45.

9           DR. EVANS: We already know about the vast  
10 majority of them.

11           DR. FITZGERALD: Right. But things will  
12 become less deterministic rather than more. In that  
13 case, then you are incentivized, in a sense, to engage  
14 with other people to get the information in order to  
15 pull together in an integrated fashion, which is what  
16 personalized medicine is supposed to be anyway.

17           DR. EVANS: It is hard for me to see how  
18 that is going to solve what Rochelle brings up.

19           DR. WILLIAMS: To Kevin's point, even though  
20 the association studies are showing genes of  
21 relatively low level of effect, the reality is the  
22 market for those is enormous compared to any of the

1 case studies that we are looking at.

2 DR. EVANS: Perhaps. I don't know. I would  
3 still say perhaps. We have no idea clinically if  
4 assessing somebody at a 1.3 relative risk for diabetes  
5 is ever going to be valuable.

6 DR. WILLIAMS: I would argue that we do have  
7 examples not in the DNA realm but certainly in the  
8 protein realm, looking at things like CRP and Hpa and  
9 some of those sorts of things.

10 DR. EVANS: I think those exactly prove my  
11 point. They are of minimal clinical utility, for the  
12 most part.

13 DR. WILLIAMS: Although the new APP3  
14 guidelines suggest that they are going to be very  
15 important in terms of what LDL target you treat for.  
16 There is relatively good evidence around that.

17 Again, the issue here is not necessarily the  
18 science but the convincing and the uptake. We know  
19 that the adoption curve for physicians in terms of new  
20 testing is relatively slow. So it may take 10 to 20  
21 years, basically.

22 But the bottom line is, once it does take

1 off, it takes off very strongly. So I wouldn't  
2 necessarily again be sanguine that because we haven't  
3 seen high adoption of some of these biomarkers at the  
4 present time that that doesn't mean within five years  
5 that we are going to see that.

6 DR. EVANS: Absolutely. I think we could.  
7 But again, I don't think that takes us out of the  
8 realm where we should be sanguine about the prospect  
9 of patent thickets and holdouts. I think that this is  
10 a looming problem. That is my impression. Alan.

11 DR. GUTTMACHER: I think it is a very good  
12 slide because it helps prevent us from being generals  
13 fighting the last war. The case examples we went over  
14 this morning I think are very useful and very  
15 informative, but of course by definition they examine  
16 the past. This field really is changing very quickly.

17 A point that Marc made before, that Claire  
18 Driscoll from NHRI has made to me eloquently, is of  
19 course that many of the patents which we have talked  
20 about are going to expire very soon. Then when we  
21 look forward, we really do need to think about the  
22 time of being able to sequence the whole genome.

1           At that point, there will still be some of  
2 these which will become an issue, but the larger  
3 problem in terms of patenting then is going to be  
4 simply the technology of the genome analysis and how  
5 that is patented and licensed. I think we have an  
6 opportunity now to look forward to that. If we are  
7 going to make recommendations or other kinds of  
8 things, we should make sure that those are  
9 recommendations which look forward and emphasize how  
10 we deal with that kind of perceivable but not yet here  
11 world, as opposed to simply how do we fix the past.

12           DR. EVANS: That is a good point. Who is  
13 next? Lori.

14           DR. PRESSMAN: Around the technique and the  
15 physical sciences, there is a lot of competition,  
16 which I won't get into.

17           On that slide, I wonder if instead of  
18 "patent" you should put "information thicket." One  
19 concern is to be mindful of creating incentives for  
20 people to disclose phenotypic to genotypic  
21 correlations. Those won't be patented.

22           DR. EVANS: Or will they? Association

1 patents. Maybe we should weigh in on that.

2 DR. PRESSMAN: Maybe they will be patented,  
3 or there will be secret databases. That seems like  
4 something really not good because those don't expire.

5 DR. EVANS: Right, right. Brian.

6 DR. STANTON: I was just going to advise the  
7 Committee that in March of next year when the new  
8 cabinet comes in, the new patent bill will be coming  
9 up again. One of the things they will be considering,  
10 as somebody mentioned, is the Lab Corp. case, which  
11 deals with the simple correlation and what the  
12 standard is. That will be on the table, or is  
13 supposed to be. The leadership has been saying in the  
14 Senate that they want to bring it up in the next  
15 Congress.

16 I just wanted this Committee to be aware of  
17 that. The next meeting is, I think, in February.  
18 There might be some chance to bring your opinion to  
19 the Senate.

20 DR. EVANS: Thank you. Marc, then Debra.

21 DR. WILLIAMS: This relates to the point  
22 that Alan made about looking to the future. I think

1 the other thing that we have clearly been promulgating  
2 is that in order to make any of this work, at least  
3 for common disease variants, it is going to require  
4 robust clinical decision support in terms of combining  
5 information. That of course in some sense now is  
6 being treated as a device in and of itself. That is  
7 another area that, whether or not combining that  
8 information is going to actually be a device and  
9 patentable, will also dramatically impact how we are  
10 going to be able to use this information.

11 DR. EVANS: Preliminary conclusions. I  
12 think this one is a fairly straightforward one. The  
13 field is opaque. It is difficult to assess the  
14 current landscape of gene patents for diagnostic  
15 purposes, associated licenses, and whether the IP  
16 rights are directly affecting clinical and patient  
17 access to diagnostic genetic tests. I think that is  
18 pretty clear.

19 The lack of transparency also has  
20 implications as well for the future. When it comes to  
21 multiplex testing, how does a potential provider know  
22 if their test even infringes on another's rights. We

1 even jumped beyond that when we said that we might  
2 have infringement problems. How are you going to  
3 know, as you develop this test, if you have  
4 infringement problems. In other words, the  
5 transaction costs of this begin to rise quickly  
6 because of this opacity.

7 I want to explain something because I think  
8 that unless we frame this correctly there could be  
9 considerable misunderstanding about what we are trying  
10 to do with this range of potential policy options.

11 We are not saying as a task force or, if we  
12 approve such a range, as a Committee that this is what  
13 we are telling the Secretary. This is a very complex  
14 landscape. We are trying to frame the issues with a  
15 range. Some of them are virtually "mom and apple pie"  
16 kinds of things. Others will have vociferous  
17 objections from some people. But I think it is  
18 reasonable and instructive to bracket this field and  
19 put out a range of options.

20 I will say it again. Some of these will be  
21 mutually exclusive. Some of these will be ones that  
22 depart considerably from what I think and what you

1 think, but I think it is reasonable to have them out  
2 there and get public comment. Then, next time we can  
3 have a really friendly conversation about what should  
4 go into the final recommendation.

5           We have divided this range of options into  
6 eight categories. They are categorized by the nature  
7 of the action, how the change would be effected, and  
8 the entity to whom the recommendation is directed.

9           The categories of potential policy options  
10 include advocacy efforts by key stakeholders to ensure  
11 access, enhancing transparency in patents and  
12 licensing, filling data gaps, federal efforts to  
13 promote broad licensing and patient access, licensing  
14 policies governing federally funded research to  
15 facilitate access, study federal implementation of IP  
16 laws or recommendations related to that, improving and  
17 clarifying PTO policy, and finally, seeking or  
18 recommending statutory changes be sought.

19           Again, why present this range? To present a  
20 number of options to the public to help frame the  
21 issues. The public perspectives will then help guide  
22 formulation of final recommendations to the Secretary.

1 Yes.

2 DR. FITZGERALD: Just a procedure question.

3 My sense is from this what you are saying is you are  
4 looking at this issue as at the same time complex and  
5 yet opaque. You want to get this feedback without  
6 necessarily indicating that the next meeting is going  
7 to be the meeting where this report is finalized. It  
8 could be, but it may not be.

9 DR. EVANS: It is not so much that. It is  
10 that we feel like just putting out an unstructured  
11 call for comments would be far less productive than  
12 putting out a framework of possible options that  
13 people can then comment on.

14 The other side of the spectrum would be to  
15 just have come up as a task force with the  
16 recommendations. That would not be fair to the  
17 Committee and it wouldn't be fair to the public. I  
18 think this is a nice amalgam of that.

19 But we do very much hope to move along  
20 quickly on this. There is 60 days for public comment.  
21 Then we will have some more of those really fun  
22 conference calls and we will come up with something.

1 Then, in a full meeting we will nail down our  
2 recommendations.

3 DR. ASPINALL: Just to clarify the process,  
4 we are going to have public comment live today with  
5 people? No?

6 DR. EVANS: We will.

7 DR. TEUTSCH: But not on this.

8 DR. EVANS: Some people may comment on this.  
9 The main public comment will be in that 60-day  
10 period.

11 DR. ASPINALL: That is what I wanted to  
12 understand. It will be written comments like we have  
13 had on the last couple.

14 DR. TEUTSCH: Yes. It is the formal  
15 process.

16 DR. EVANS: Then we will do all that  
17 laborious culling.

18 DR. ASPINALL: Then we may have live comment  
19 at the next meeting as well.

20 DR. EVANS: We always have live comment.

21 DR. ASPINALL: Right. But then we will be  
22 looking towards finalizing this or putting it in

1 writing at the next meeting.

2 DR. TEUTSCH: Correct. But we really want  
3 the public comments in writing before then so that we  
4 have as much as we are going to have so that we can  
5 reach some recommendations.

6 DR. ASPINALL: That is what I wanted to  
7 clarify.

8 DR. EVANS: The public has 60 days.

9 DR. ASPINALL: After this meeting, the  
10 documentation we have talked about today will be  
11 available for public comment.

12 DR. TEUTSCH: Yes. Once we approve it  
13 today.

14 DR. EVANS: Once we approve the draft.

15 DR. TEUTSCH: It will go out for that  
16 purpose.

17 DR. EVANS: Let me keep moving here because  
18 we will need all the time we can get.

19 I will just make a plea for balance at the  
20 start. I don't think this is a particularly  
21 controversial statement, but the patent system in this  
22 country works pretty well. We should be mindful of

1 unintended consequences that could result from  
2 suggested changes. It is the baby and the bath water  
3 argument. We don't want to muck up the whole system  
4 by trying to fix things.

5           On the other hand, if there are problems or  
6 likely future problems, I don't see it as unreasonable  
7 to recommend judicious policy changes. The key is  
8 balance. We need a proportional response to identify  
9 problems and potential problems. That would be my  
10 plea.

11           The questions for the following draft  
12 options are the following. I want you to keep these  
13 in mind as we go through them. Are there policy  
14 options that should be added, removed, or modified  
15 prior to releasing the draft. We have heard some  
16 suggestions. We could get that input. I'm sure the  
17 task force came up with the perfect document, so I  
18 can't imagine there would be changes.

19           Is the range of policy options presented  
20 supported by preliminary findings. Are there any  
21 other issues that need to be addressed in the report  
22 before it is released for public comment. Overall,

1 and with the understanding that further editing may be  
2 needed, is the draft report ready to be released for  
3 public comment in early 2009 for that 60-day period.

4           With those kinds of instructions in mind,  
5 let's tackle the first ones. Some of these, as I  
6 mentioned, are kind of "mom and apple pie" types of  
7 things.

8           "With regard to advocacy efforts by key  
9 stakeholders to ensure access:

10           "A) In order to optimize patient access to  
11 and the quality of genetic tests, stakeholders -- that  
12 is, for example, industry, academic institutions,  
13 researchers, patients -- should work together to  
14 develop a code of conduct to encourage broad access to  
15 technologies through licensing agreements for the  
16 diagnostic use of gene patents."

17           Comments?

18           DR. LEONARD: But, given the discussion of  
19 quality, I think the quality issue --

20           DR. EVANS: Right. As I read it I thought,  
21 wait a minute, why do we want "quality" here. Why  
22 don't we leave that out. "Patient access to genetic

1 tests." Mara.

2 DR. ASPINALL: I have some issues with a  
3 number of these, but I'm wondering whether it makes  
4 sense to edit these or really leave them as they are  
5 and then have the comments on them.

6 DR. EVANS: That is a good point.

7 DR. ASPINALL: I think this presumes a lot  
8 of things. Otherwise, we will never get through it.

9 DR. EVANS: Right. I don't want to do too  
10 much wordsmithing here because the whole purpose of  
11 the subsequent phase of this is to get people's input.  
12 I do think that [we should discuss] if there are  
13 really substantive reasons not to have things or ones  
14 to add. I think your point is good. Unless there are  
15 huge issues, I think we should proceed.

16 DR. ASPINALL: The only issue that I will  
17 say is, that implies that as a result of the patent  
18 system we don't have broad access, which some of the  
19 case studies said we do and some of the case studies  
20 said we don't.

21 DR. EVANS: It says "in order to optimize."  
22 I don't think this necessarily implies it is bad. I

1 think that we want the most access possible.

2 DR. WILLIAMS: The other point I would make  
3 relating to the quality thing and the reason to maybe  
4 recharacterize it or restate but not take it out, is  
5 the point that Andrea brought up before that some of  
6 us include within the general term of "quality" the  
7 idea that if you are not operating certain parts of  
8 the test, that affects what might be considered to be  
9 the utility of that test. So you might want to  
10 characterize that as utility as opposed to quality,  
11 leaving out the "analytic validity" piece of it.

12 DR. EVANS: So, how would you phrase that?

13 DR. WILLIAMS: "In order to optimize patient  
14 access to and the utility of."

15 DR. ASPINALL: Can I ask, does that include  
16 the issue that sometimes we are having very many  
17 companies or labs doing one test who actually may have  
18 lesser quality because there are variable, different  
19 standards and not a clarified ability to show one  
20 reference standard?

21 DR. WILLIAMS: You are talking about  
22 analytic testing?

1 DR. ASPINALL: Yes.

2 DR. WILLIAMS: That is not what I'm talking  
3 about.

4 DR. ASPINALL: No. I'm saying it should  
5 include that as well if you want to include that.

6 DR. WILLIAMS: No, that is a different  
7 issue.

8 DR. EVANS: That was the point. We wanted  
9 to separate analytical validity from clinical utility  
10 and clinical value.

11 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: We were talking  
12 about adding different mutations, Mara, here that will  
13 have different clinical utility. Clinical utility  
14 will cover that portion of being able to only detect  
15 95 percent of the mutations versus 50 percent or not  
16 being able to add that mutation to the panel.

17 DR. EVANS: Kevin.

18 DR. FITZGERALD: It might be helpful for our  
19 own reflection if you add into (A) that HHS should  
20 bring together these stakeholders to develop a code.  
21 Then we find out from the public whether they think  
22 HHS is the place actually to do that or there is some

1 other group to do that.

2 DR. EVANS: We could say "should work  
3 together (perhaps facilitated by HHS)."

4 DR. FITZGERALD: Just put that in there so  
5 we get that feedback and we can see whether that is  
6 the place that that is supposed to happen or not.

7 DR. EVANS: "B) When different stakeholders -  
8 - for example, academic researchers, industry, and  
9 patient organizations -- work together to advance the  
10 identification of gene mutations and the development  
11 of diagnostic tests, the owner of any resulting  
12 invention should consult with those stakeholders  
13 regarding whether to seek patent protection and how  
14 any resulting patents should be licensed."

15 Does that seem controversial to anyone?

16 MS. AU: What is the action step on this  
17 one? Who is enforcing this?

18 DR. EVANS: Believe me, we get to ones that  
19 have big teeth. Have no fear. This is a  
20 recommendation. This is a statement that we should  
21 all get along.

22 DR. WILLIAMS: Actually, this is a

1 statement. It is not really a recommendation. The  
2 recommendation could be that DHHS provide a role or a  
3 forum by which the stakeholders could actually get  
4 together and discuss these issues.

5 DR. EVANS: That is interesting. Maybe we  
6 could consider that as another option to put out there  
7 on the table.

8 DR. BILLINGS: What I don't understand about  
9 this one is, I thought the patents were held in some  
10 level of secrecy until they were filed. How are we  
11 going to have these discussions within the context of  
12 how patent information is handled?

13 DR. EVANS: I think what this is saying is  
14 that when different stakeholders work together to  
15 identify a gene and develop a test, the owner of the  
16 resulting invention should consult. I think that it  
17 doesn't preclude not consulting. It is a  
18 recommendation or a suggestion that this is the most  
19 beneficial way of proceeding.

20 DR. BILLINGS: But when? After the filing,  
21 before the filing? When, exactly?

22 DR. EVANS: I don't know. We didn't

1 approach it that way.

2 DR. TEUTSCH: It is probably not about  
3 whether but it is about how it gets implemented.

4 DR. BILLINGS: This actually has something  
5 to do with marketing of tests.

6 DR. COOK-DEEGAN: Paul, this is Bob. I  
7 think what this is trying to get at -- I'm not  
8 absolutely sure -- is let's use the Huntington's  
9 disease and cystic fibrosis model. The constituencies  
10 were at the table when the decisions were made about  
11 how and when to file patent applications. The fact  
12 that something can be secret does not mean that it has  
13 to be secret. In this case they were not.

14 That is in contrast with the Canavan case,  
15 which I presume is what this is mainly aimed at.  
16 Don't screw up your relationships with the  
17 constituencies that contributed to your invention.

18 DR. EVANS: Maybe Paul's objections could be  
19 overcome by saying instead of "the owner of any  
20 resulting invention," "those stakeholders should  
21 consult with one another regarding whether to seek  
22 patent protection. I think that would get around some

1 of the ambiguity that, Paul, you highlight there.

2 DR. ASPINALL: Either way, there may be  
3 patents in process that people may not choose to  
4 share. I think you could phrase it either way, but as  
5 a live entity under today's system there very well may  
6 be things that people do or don't want to share.  
7 Maybe some would say, I don't want to sit here because  
8 I don't want to learn things that will impinge upon  
9 this.

10 I think in and of itself this is meant to be  
11 draft and then to have more substantive comments on it  
12 later. I think Paul's point is a good one as to how  
13 logistically this will work. There are those who may  
14 want to do it but they are unable to.

15 DR. EVANS: Right. So, what if, instead of  
16 "the owner," we said "those stakeholders should  
17 consult with one another." This is more of a general  
18 admonition in the field.

19 DR. LEONARD: Actually, this could be a  
20 recommendation to patient organizations, when they are  
21 beginning to interact to advance identification of  
22 gene mutations and the development of diagnostic

1 tests, that they proactively make their input a  
2 condition of their involvement.

3 DR. EVANS: That is a little different.  
4 This is an admonition to, really, all those  
5 stakeholders. I think you are right. It is  
6 instructed by our experience with the Canavan  
7 experience, where this didn't happen. Now, I don't  
8 know whether us just saying, you should play well  
9 together, is going to do anything.

10 I don't want to dwell too much on this  
11 because these are "mom and apple pie." We want people  
12 to get along. I think it is useful for our Committee  
13 to mention this, but I think when we have things that  
14 have no enforcement we shouldn't spend that much time.  
15 We do have to break for lunch. Mike.

16 DR. AMOS: I just want to say, to the extent  
17 that this is sent to the Secretary of Health and Human  
18 Services, what is an actionable statement that we can  
19 make to get to the point where the Secretary can set  
20 up a commission or set up a forum to promote this.  
21 "Where possible, HHS should promote," blah, blah,  
22 blah.

1 DR. EVANS: That is a really good point.  
2 Maybe at the lunch break we can do that.

3 DR. ASPINALL: In thinking about it,  
4 something like that may be necessary at least post  
5 granting of patents because I think there is an aspect  
6 of this, which I don't think was the intention, which  
7 is restraining free trade. If you haven't filed your  
8 patents you can't say, I'm going to file this one  
9 first, so-and-so is going to file this one second.

10 DR. EVANS: Yes. Collusion is not something  
11 we want to encourage.

12 DR. ASPINALL: So if part of the idea is,  
13 you have these patents, so how do we make the world  
14 better for health care. It may be after granting as  
15 opposed to before granting. That gets to Paul's issue  
16 as well.

17 DR. EVANS: At the lunch break we can talk  
18 about that. We are going to have to finish up with  
19 this one and then go to lunch. Joseph.

20 DR. TELFAIR: My question is more of a point  
21 of both clarification and information. It is a  
22 feasibility question. I agree with the statement made

1 about what is actionable, but I have to back up and  
2 ask the question how realistic is this? Maybe it can  
3 be answered here. Do we have adequate information  
4 about how often this actually occurs in the  
5 development process such that we could spend  
6 reasonable time getting this done?

7           It seems to me that if we are going to make  
8 this a recommendation, it should be a strong enough  
9 recommendation on accessible data and information that  
10 we can actually say, do something about it. If it's  
11 just not done often enough, [it may not] even be  
12 something that is reasonable to consider.

13           DR. EVANS: Again, I think that the case  
14 studies clearly demonstrate there are times that when  
15 this didn't happen there were problems. I don't think  
16 it is unreasonable to admonish --

17           DR. TELFAIR: I'm sorry. That is not what  
18 I'm saying. I'm just saying I recognize from the case  
19 study that it happens sometimes that it's not. I'm  
20 just worried about when the "not" occurs.

21           DR. AMOS: My guess is that it is not going  
22 to happen that many more times for individual genes.

1 It might, but when you start multiplexing these tests  
2 and trying to put them together on one platform, the  
3 issues are going to become very, very complex. That  
4 is something I think we may want to consider looking  
5 in the future.

6 DR. TELFAIR: Then, can I just recommend  
7 that that actually become the focus more and that is  
8 considered when we talk about more actionable steps  
9 and what to do? It seems to me that that would  
10 actually help focus a little bit more whatever  
11 recommendations that we make in terms of something  
12 very concrete to do.

13 DR. EVANS: I think we can focus this some.  
14 We will do that during the break and then come back  
15 with some wording. One more comment.

16 DR. WILLIAMS: Again, thinking about  
17 actionability, speaking as someone who is really naive  
18 in terms of how these agencies work together, would  
19 there be a role for the Secretary to convene something  
20 that would involve the Patent Office, Commerce, and  
21 different people at the governmental level who have a  
22 stakeholder's interest in this as well, to say here

1 are the issues that have been teed up by our advisory  
2 committee. We think it impacts you. Can we get  
3 together and discuss your perspective on this. I  
4 don't know if that would be reasonable or not.

5 DR. EVANS: Again, what we need to do is now  
6 take a break. Anybody who is interested, come on over  
7 here and we will talk a little about adjusting this.

8 We start back at 1 o'clock with public  
9 comments. Then, 1:30 to 3:15 we will try to soldier  
10 through. Just be warned we will take the break away  
11 if we aren't done.

12 [Lunch recess taken at 12:22 p.m.]

13 + + +



1 [No response.]

2 DR. TEUTSCH: No? Well, I see that our next  
3 presenter is sitting in the back. He is a frequent  
4 attendee of these meetings and someone who we always  
5 learn a lot from. Mike Watson is representing the  
6 American College of Medical Genetics.

7 Welcome again, Michael. We appreciate your  
8 comments.

9 **Comments by Michael Watson, Ph.D.**

10 **American College of Medical Genetics**

11 DR. WATSON: Thank you. I'm going to keep  
12 my comments brief. I think most of what I have to say  
13 was pretty clear in the letter that I wrote to the  
14 Committee.

15 I had the luxury, that most here obviously  
16 didn't have, of listening to the webcast from my  
17 office this morning, so I will try not to repeat  
18 things that you have already talked about. Perhaps I  
19 will raise a few issues that have risen recently that  
20 I didn't hear mentioned this morning. They may have  
21 come up while I was driving down here, but who knows.

22 I'm from the American College of Medical

1 Genetics. We represent board-certified medical  
2 geneticists, both clinical and laboratory geneticists,  
3 in the United States.

4           As far as I know, we are the only  
5 organization that has an actual policy position that  
6 genes are naturally occurring substances and should  
7 not have been patentable initially. However, given  
8 the inability to adequately address that problem, we  
9 have focused a lot of our interest on unfair licensing  
10 issues.

11           Now, I do want to say in preface that I  
12 would never want to encourage anyone to infringe on a  
13 patent. Anything I say I hope you take as purely  
14 educational. I have had people inquire about the  
15 value of my home in the past in relation to patent  
16 issues, so I clearly don't want anyone to be  
17 encouraged to infringe on a patent.

18           I will say that, at this point in time,  
19 there is little evidence that patents have led to  
20 products. There are very few products available in  
21 genetic testing. Products used to be the way by which  
22 most licensing was done. Royalties were accrued

1 through the development of a particular product that  
2 made testing better and easier, or cheaper, and that  
3 laboratories thought improved on their own laboratory-  
4 developed tests.

5           Among those 1,500 genes on which we  
6 currently do testing, there is very little evidence  
7 that patents have led to any products, aside from a  
8 very few, at this point in time. There is limited  
9 evidence that the patents and their license have  
10 improved services, either. A few examples I would  
11 agree to, but for the most part there is very little  
12 evidence of improvement in the delivery of services.

13           Now, I think one of the interesting things  
14 about gene patents is that they are typically very  
15 well developed in the diagnostic sector before anybody  
16 imposes patent rights or licensing rights on  
17 particular genes. That is because they are primarily  
18 for rare diseases and there is no financial incentive  
19 to go into enforcement of those genes until the point  
20 when the test moves out of diagnostic and family-based  
21 medicine and into population-based areas.

22           This is what happened with Canavan disease

1 when it went to carrier screening. It was very  
2 shortly after two organizations, ACOG and us,  
3 recommended that carrier screening begin that the  
4 enforcement of those patents came into play. That is  
5 a very common phenomenon for the patents held in  
6 diagnostic genetic testing.

7           There are studies that have been done about  
8 gene patenting. Almost everybody in this room has  
9 watched these for 10 years. As far as I can tell,  
10 they largely focus on the research issues, not on  
11 clinical investigation as we know it in genetics but  
12 really on basic research, and have documented not a  
13 significant impact on research. I think the situation  
14 is very different in the clinical practice arena.

15           There was a recent paper in Science.  
16 Christopher Holman just a few weeks ago made a couple  
17 of arguments about gene patenting. He argued that  
18 there was very little litigation and that in and of  
19 itself was evidence that there was not a problem with  
20 patenting of genes as they related to genetic testing.

21           I think that is a misstatement. Our  
22 experience is that the litigation has been extremely

1 limited due to the extreme cost of litigation in  
2 patent-related issues. We engaged in a litigation  
3 backing Kaiser Permanente in a case involving human  
4 chorionic gonadotropin back in the mid to late '90s.

5 At that time it was only about \$1.5- to \$2 million to  
6 engage in one of these cases and get all the way to  
7 the merits of the case in court.

8           We actually went through about \$200,000 in  
9 that case and never got to the merits of the case.  
10 They gave a covenant not to sue to Kaiser, who then  
11 allowed them to do all the testing they wanted to do,  
12 without ever getting to the merits. Everybody else  
13 who had contracts and other relationships was then in  
14 the same boat they had been in.

15           The other argument they make is that there  
16 has been no imposition of gene patents on the new  
17 multiplex array technologies. I think this is clearly  
18 no longer the case, either. There have been a couple  
19 of recent examples. A laboratory has been told to  
20 take the dystrophin gene for Duchenne muscular  
21 dystrophy off of its CGH arrays.

22           What their lawyers determined was that they

1 would not have to take them off of the array but they  
2 would not be able to report out a deletion or  
3 duplication in the dystrophin gene itself, seriously  
4 imposing on the practice of medicine and the duty to  
5 inform when that laboratory identifies that Duchenne  
6 muscular dystrophy-related abnormality in array CGH.

7           Another situation has arisen recently. It  
8 is circuitous because it overlaps a couple of the  
9 examples Bob Cook-Deegan gave you this morning. He  
10 talked about newborn screening for hearing loss. He  
11 also talked about Long QT syndrome.

12           In the hearing loss world, one of the goals  
13 of manufacturers has been to develop an array that can  
14 identify kids in newborn screening molecularly. They  
15 come out with a functional test found to be hearing  
16 loss, and we would like a molecular test that allows  
17 us to identify the multitude of abnormalities that can  
18 lead to hearing loss.

19           Unfortunately, one of those is Jervell and  
20 Lange-Nielsen syndrome, also associated with Long QT  
21 syndrome. When one is doing this for a child that  
22 presents with hearing loss, you are now not allowed to

1 test for that particular gene in the arrays because it  
2 imposes on the Long QT patents.

3 I think increasing examples are arising of  
4 real patent thickets developing around gene patents  
5 that are going to require us to find some way out of  
6 the box. We really only see two options. One is to  
7 go back to the Ganske-Frist amendment and separate out  
8 the exemption for diagnostic use of gene patents from  
9 the protection of gene patents for the development of  
10 therapeutics. Clearly, that is a high-investment area  
11 where one wants to protect that investment to lead to  
12 the products we need in therapeutics. The evidence of  
13 that benefit arising on the diagnostic testing side is  
14 quite thin.

15 I had better not go on. There is another  
16 case. I would encourage you to look at the case of  
17 Mayo Labs v. Prometheus Labs because it is bringing us  
18 back to the Metabolife Labs v. Lab Corp. case in the  
19 very near future. It is currently at the circuit  
20 court.

21 DR. TEUTSCH: Thanks so much, Michael. We  
22 appreciate that. Our next speaker is changing her

1 role here. Debra Leonard is representing the  
2 Association of Molecular Pathology. So you are going  
3 to change hats instantly, I assume.

4 **Comments by Debra Leonard, M.D., Ph.D.**

5 **Association of Molecular Pathology**

6 DR. LEONARD: I am here representing the  
7 Association for Molecular Pathology. We have recently  
8 rewritten our AMP position statement on gene patents  
9 and exclusive licensing of genetic discoveries. I  
10 would like to share that with you.

11 Many disease-associated human genes and  
12 human pathogens have been identified in recent years,  
13 and more will be discovered in the coming decades.  
14 Clinical laboratories in both the public and private  
15 sectors translate and develop many of these  
16 discoveries into molecular diagnostic tests and seek  
17 to make these tests widely available as clinical  
18 services for the public good.

19 Clinical laboratories can only develop these  
20 important tests when they have access to the broadest  
21 base of genomic discoveries. The U.S. Patent and  
22 Trademark Office has historically granted broad

1 patents on genomic discoveries. Frequently, patent  
2 holders and their exclusive licensees are choosing to  
3 monopolize molecular testing by restricting healthcare  
4 providers from developing or performing tests covered  
5 by these patents and licenses.

6 AMP believes that molecular test services  
7 are medical procedures. As such, they should be  
8 widely available to promote optimal patient care,  
9 medical education, and medical research. Research,  
10 development, and practice of molecular testing is  
11 essential to medical practice, the education of  
12 physicians, researchers, and healthcare professionals,  
13 and the continued improvement of the quality of  
14 medical care.

15 While attaching intellectual property rights  
16 to true acts of invention, such as new therapeutics,  
17 diagnostics, or technology platforms is essential to  
18 encourage investment and reward innovation, a single  
19 gene or a sequence of the genome is a product of  
20 nature and should not be patentable.

21 Gene patents can serve as a disincentive to  
22 innovation in molecular testing because they deny

1 access to a vital baseline of genomic information that  
2 cannot be invented around. Moreover, the threat of  
3 enforcement from a patent holder and the ensuing  
4 litigation costs lead to a chilling effect, as  
5 clinical laboratories are reluctant to develop new  
6 tests which could directly benefit patients.

7           In addition to the concern about gene  
8 patents, exclusive licenses that confine molecular  
9 testing to a single provider are detrimental to the  
10 public interest by limiting patient access to testing,  
11 restricting medical practice and research, and  
12 impeding the advancement of medical knowledge and  
13 enhancement of the public's health through informed  
14 clinical decision-making.

15           Moreover, no governing standards currently  
16 exist that would prohibit the practice of granting  
17 exclusive licenses. Most patented discoveries of  
18 human genes or human pathogens can be effectively  
19 translated into molecular tests provided they are  
20 licensed on a non-exclusive basis and licenses are  
21 easily obtainable both in financial and practical  
22 terms.

1           Therefore, AMP recommends the following.

2           The patenting of single genes, sequences of  
3 a genome, or correlations between genetic variations  
4 and biological states should be discontinued, either  
5 as a result of judicial review or through an act of  
6 Congress.

7           Entities, including higher educational and  
8 research institutions, that currently hold gene  
9 patents should not grant exclusive licenses to these  
10 patents.

11           To ensure that access to innovative  
12 molecular tests remains widely available and  
13 affordable to patients, financial terms for test  
14 licenses should be reasonable and sole-source testing  
15 should be prohibited. License agreements should also  
16 be free of any terms that limit the number of tests  
17 that can be performed by a laboratory or regulate the  
18 technical performance or clinical uses of a test.

19           License agreement should be likewise free of  
20 terms that inappropriately limit research related to  
21 testing or the public dissemination of the resulting  
22 research findings.

1           AMP encourages all stakeholders to work  
2 cooperatively to develop alternative models to gene  
3 patents and exclusive licenses. Innovative,  
4 alternative models should be developed that increase  
5 patient access to health care and achieve greater  
6 benefit from our current knowledge of the human  
7 genome. Thank you.

8           DR. TEUTSCH: Great. Thanks so much, Debra.  
9 We appreciate all of that. I'm going to move us  
10 along because we are just pressed for time.

11           The next speaker is Guido Brink, who is from  
12 Agendia. Thanks for coming.

13                           **Comments by Guido Brink**

14                                   **Agendia**

15           MR. BRINK: Thank you so much. I have a  
16 quick question or comment for the Committee. My name  
17 is Guido Brink. I am director of regulatory affairs  
18 and reimbursement for Agendia. I think Dr. Gutman can  
19 agree with me that, when we talk about genetic tests,  
20 the devil is in the details of the definition. What  
21 we have seen with the whole discussion around IVDMIAS  
22 is that industry has taken a lot of time and effort to

1 try to define IVDMIAAs and to try to exclude certain  
2 deaths from the IVDMIA definition.

3           When I look at the definition currently  
4 stated by the Committee, it says genetic tests are,  
5 for purposes of this study, any test performed using  
6 molecular biology methods to test DNA or RNA. In our  
7 case, we have a gene expression profile. We do not  
8 assess any mutations. We do not want to assess any  
9 mutations. We assess the expression of a gene or  
10 multiple genes and put that into an algorithm to come  
11 to a conclusion on disease state.

12           My recommendation to the Committee, or my  
13 question, would be within this definition gene  
14 expression profiling tests would be genetic tests,  
15 although when I look at the case studies and at the  
16 investigations performed, no genomic profiles or  
17 expression profiles are investigated. It is purely  
18 mutation assays. So my question would be, or my  
19 recommendation, is looking back at what has been  
20 investigated to clearly define what has been  
21 investigated and to maybe redefine "genetic test" in  
22 this study.

1 DR. TEUTSCH: Great. Thank you. That is  
2 very helpful information that we can look at as we  
3 revise the draft.

4 The last one I have on my list is Carol Reed  
5 from Clinical Data, Incorporated. Welcome.

6 **Comments by Carol Reed**

7 **Clinical Data, Incorporated**

8 MS. REED: Hello. My name is Carol Reed.  
9 I'm chief medical officer of Clinical Data. Just to  
10 clarify for everyone, we are the parent company of  
11 which PGx Health is a subsidiary. I think it was  
12 reversed on the slides earlier today. We offer the  
13 FAMILION test for Long QT testing, a high-quality test  
14 of which we are very proud.

15 This test is actually a great example of a  
16 product that has arisen out of an exclusive patent  
17 license, and I think that has been extensively  
18 discussed already.

19 I would just like to make three points for  
20 the Committee. First of all, as a public, for-profit  
21 company, yes, we do license intellectual property.  
22 Our intent is to commercialize that, not to sit on it

1 or hide it. That is too expensive a proposition. I  
2 think we have shown our intent to do that by launching  
3 our FAMILION test in 2004.

4           In the time since that test was launched,  
5 other genes for Long QT syndrome have in fact been  
6 identified. We feel that one of the reasons for this  
7 is the success of our commercial test because the  
8 burden of testing for those five genes has in fact  
9 relieved research laboratories of having to sequence  
10 those more common causes of Long QT syndrome and freed  
11 their resources to identify more rare causative genes.

12           Secondly, I would like to address the issue  
13 of patient access. Although patents are certainly a  
14 major topic of discussion in this area, we should not  
15 ignore the issue of reimbursement and payer policy in  
16 covering these tests. In fact, I believe that  
17 patients are more directly affected in terms of their  
18 access to testing by payer reimbursement policies.

19           Again, to use Long QT testing as an example,  
20 we have made a significant investment in our customer  
21 service group as well as our prior authorization  
22 group, and in fact many times acquiring authorization

1 to pay for a test takes more time than it does to  
2 actually perform the test and return the results to  
3 patients.

4           We have invested significantly in people who  
5 work directly with managed care. We have succeeded in  
6 getting Medicaid coverage in 38 states and have  
7 coverage pending in the remaining 12. We are also an  
8 approved Medicare provider and now, by combining with  
9 private and government insurance, we have succeeded in  
10 gaining coverage for over 160 million lives in the  
11 United States. This is a significant advantage that  
12 we would not have invested in without patent  
13 protection for our test.

14           Thirdly, I think we should not  
15 underemphasize the importance of expertise in  
16 interpretation of these mutational analysis tests. It  
17 is very important to be able to draw a direct  
18 relationship between a discovered mutation and the  
19 structural relationship to the protein and to have a  
20 normal database against which to compare frequencies  
21 of mutations and other variants identified during  
22 testing. Without the investment that we made to build

1 the normal mutational and SNP database, we would not  
2 be able to provide interpretation of these tests.

3           Moving towards sequencing these tests in  
4 whole-genome scans may in fact prove to be dangerous  
5 for our patients because low-risk patients are going  
6 to have variants identified without the appropriate  
7 background against which to interpret and analyze  
8 these results. Patients may in fact be put in danger  
9 of inappropriate interventions, including the  
10 implantation of defibrillators.

11           Finally, I would suggest to Brian that  
12 perhaps he might include the cost of interpretation of  
13 these sorts of tests and the resources that are put  
14 into that in his cost modeling, as we begin to  
15 understand the impact of price and cost of genetic  
16 testing.

17           Thank you to the Committee for hearing my  
18 comments.

19           DR. TEUTSCH: Great. Thank you very much.  
20 These are very helpful comments for us as we  
21 deliberate.

22           Let me just check again. Is Ms. Salberg

1 here?

2 [No response.]

3 DR. TEUTSCH: If not, then we will move back  
4 to the primary topic of the day. I think our  
5 discussion will be informed by many of these  
6 perspectives from our presenters.

7 Folks, we have about 1.75 hours to get  
8 through all of the recommendations.

9 DR. EVANS: If you want a break.

10 DR. TEUTSCH: If you want a break.  
11 Otherwise we could be here until seven or eight.

12 Jim and colleagues have done a great job of  
13 leading us through a complex area this morning, but we  
14 do need to get through the recommendations. We have  
15 to get to an approval of a draft for public comment.  
16 We don't need it perfect. We need it in such a way  
17 that we can at least get it out and solicit opinions.

18 So we will be minimizing the wordsmithing and dealing  
19 with the big issues so that we can work our way  
20 through this this afternoon.

21 Jim, having done a masterful job earlier,  
22 you are on again.

1           **Discussion of Public Consultation Draft Report**  
2                   **and Range of Potential Policy Options**  
3                           **for Public Consideration**

4           DR. EVANS: During the break we added a very  
5 brief preamble to that policy recommendation that we  
6 had discussed earlier saying that HHS should develop a  
7 set of principles and guidance in order to facilitate  
8 the following. Then we went through those to try to  
9 make them more action-oriented.

10           As we proceed, again, I would emphasize that  
11 these are draft proposals to go out. They can be  
12 amended later. They can be adjusted later as part of  
13 the whole process.

14           The next one would be having to do with,  
15 again, advocacy efforts by these stakeholders.  
16 "Professional associations involved in technology  
17 transfer policy and practice should embrace and  
18 promote the principles reflected in Best Practices, as  
19 well as the Nine Points to Consider," that are well  
20 known in patent circles.

21           "They also should work together to build on  
22 those norms and practices as they relate to gene-based

1   diagnostics by articulating more specific conditions  
2   under which exclusive licensing and non-exclusive  
3   licensing of uses relevant to genetic testing are  
4   appropriate.

5                   "Professional societies should work  
6   cooperatively to forge consensus positions with  
7   respect to gene patenting and licensing policy."

8                   So again, although this is in the general  
9   nature of an admonition, it does have more granular  
10  recommendations in the sense of articulating more  
11  specific conditions for exclusive and non-exclusive  
12  licensing.  Comments?

13                   [No response.]

14                   DR. EVANS:  Steve, you must have said  
15  something.

16                   DR. TEUTSCH:  Lunch was our friend.

17                   [Laughter.]

18                   DR. EVANS:  Everybody has diverted their  
19  flood of comments.

20                   Regarding transparency, this general issue  
21  of opacity, "Holders of patents on genes, genetic  
22  tests, and related technologies, including academic

1 institutions and companies, should make their patent  
2 licenses or information about their licenses,  
3 including such factors as the type of license, field  
4 of use, and scope on those patents, publicly  
5 available."

6 Mara.

7 DR. ASPINALL: Explain what that means?  
8 Does that mean that they may have a patent but let the  
9 patent information be available to everyone?

10 DR. EVANS: No, I think it is focusing  
11 primarily on the licensing issues. They should make  
12 the licenses, including such factors as the type, the  
13 field of use, and scope, publicly available. One of  
14 the real difficulties in this whole process is  
15 figuring out what the parameters are around specific  
16 licenses.

17 DR. ASPINALL: So this means the financial  
18 factors?

19 DR. EVANS: Well, no.

20 DR. ASPINALL: Just who it goes to and who  
21 has the license. So, beyond gene tests.

22 DR. EVANS: Again, field of use, scope.

1 Yes, the test itself.

2 DR. ASPINALL: I'm trying to understand the  
3 benefit of that.

4 DR. EVANS: The problem is patents are  
5 public records. You can find them. But it is very  
6 hard to get information on licenses. That is a  
7 problem for several reasons. One is, it is difficult  
8 to assess how various agents are acting with regard to  
9 exclusivity, non-exclusivity, et cetera.

10 Number two, it creates problems for  
11 developers to know who are they violating license  
12 agreements with, et cetera. In that sense, it adds  
13 cost. Trying to shed some light on the general  
14 licensing landscape would facilitate both being able  
15 to assay the field for problems that are occurring for  
16 adherence to guidelines, like best practices, but  
17 also, presumably, would help in developing tests and  
18 commercializing tests because you would know what the  
19 landscape was out there that you were dealing with.

20 That was it, I think. Anybody else on the  
21 task force tell me if there is.

22 DR. ASPINALL: For the patent holder, they

1 would list everyone they have licensed it to, in  
2 theory, and then it would be transparent for those who  
3 are not licensed. It would also be clear that they  
4 are not one of the licensees.

5 DR. EVANS: Yes. And, field of use, et  
6 cetera. Marc.

7 DR. WILLIAMS: The question that I have  
8 from, again, the perspective of what we can advise as  
9 a Committee is --

10 DR. EVANS: Where are the teeth.

11 DR. WILLIAMS: Yes. I think it is a  
12 desirable thing. I think that there would be a lot of  
13 value to that. But what ability does the Secretary  
14 have to be able to do this. What legal landscape is  
15 there. Are there precedents in other industries.

16 DR. EVANS: That is what we will get to with  
17 these subsequent recommendations. This is more,  
18 again, in the nature of general principles, as in that  
19 first one.

20 DR. WILLIAMS: Maybe this would require a  
21 fair amount of rewriting, but it seems to me that it  
22 would be useful for the discussion to say we are in

1 the "whereases" right now. I think it would be easier  
2 in terms of discussing this as a draft going out to  
3 almost frame it as such to say here are our principles  
4 of belief, whereas, whereas, whereas, and given that  
5 here is our recommendations.

6           If you read these as recommendations,  
7 obviously it raises questions just like I asked.

8           DR. EVANS: That is a point well taken. We  
9 were talking about that at lunch. Like in that first  
10 one, I think we need to revamp these a bit and say  
11 here are some basic principles that we feel are  
12 reasonable basic principles, and that, where possible  
13 and by mechanisms possible, HHS should facilitate  
14 these things.

15           "As a means to enhance public access to  
16 information about the licensing of patents related to  
17 gene-based diagnostics, the NIH should amend the Best  
18 Practices for the Licensing of Genomic Inventions to  
19 encourage licensors and licensees to include in their  
20 license contracts a provision that allows each party  
21 to disclose information about their licenses,  
22 including such factors as type of license, field of

1 use, and scope."

2           This actually goes beyond the general  
3 principle aspect. We can renumber these or  
4 restructure these in that sense. This is more of a  
5 directive or a recommendation that says the Best  
6 Practices, which was presumably released for a reason,  
7 should be amended in order to address those specific  
8 things which we find are perhaps lacking.

9           "The Secretary of HHS should seek statutory  
10 authority to enable the Food and Drug Administration  
11 and the Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services to  
12 require patented DNA-based in vitro diagnostic tests,  
13 whether offered as a test kit or a laboratory-  
14 developed test, to display on product packaging and/or  
15 company/provider websites the issued patent and  
16 published patent numbers that the company or provider  
17 owns and controls and reasonably believes covers their  
18 product or patents licensed by the company/provider in  
19 order to market the product."

20           In other words, labeling. This is designed  
21 to shed some light on the general field and ensure  
22 that the information about patents and specifically

1 licenses is readily obtainable. Mara.

2 DR. ASPINALL: I have a question. I don't  
3 know where this came from. Is this consistent with  
4 how drugs and devices are done today?

5 DR. EVANS: I believe so.

6 DR. BILLINGS: Why is this necessary? What  
7 is the background and necessity for such a disclosure?

8 DR. EVANS: The background is that, as  
9 evidenced by the case studies, it has proven very  
10 difficult to determine, given a specific gene or given  
11 a specific test, what the license landscape is  
12 surrounding that. Again, for those same purposes of  
13 looking for adherence to things like best practices as  
14 well as for purposes of test development, et cetera,  
15 we were attempting to come to mechanisms that shed  
16 some light on this and make it approachable and easy  
17 for individuals to figure out what licenses, patents,  
18 et cetera, apply to a given test.

19 DR. TEUTSCH: Steve, do you want to answer  
20 the question about current labeling practices?

21 DR. GUTMAN: Yes. Currently, not only is  
22 labeling blind to the issue, actually our pre-market

1 review process, at least in devices, is blind to the  
2 issue. So we would be happy to clear or approve  
3 something that was intensely litigated, as long as it  
4 was safe and effective.

5 [Laughter.]

6 DR. GUTMAN: I assume that this  
7 recommendation is based on an understanding of that,  
8 because they are actually not suggesting we do this  
9 under existing law. They are actually suggesting  
10 statutory authority. If you wanted to make something  
11 less onerous, you might suggest that we seek either  
12 statutory or regulatory authority.

13 It is possible that this could be done with  
14 a rewrite of the reg rather than with a rewrite of the  
15 law. But the deal is, it isn't part of the package we  
16 offer right now.

17 DR. TEUTSCH: That is true of drugs as well?

18 DR. GUTMAN: I actually don't know. I don't  
19 recall ever having seen this information on a drug  
20 label.

21 DR. TEUTSCH: I don't believe so, either.  
22 Mara.

1 DR. ASPINALL: I guess the majority of the  
2 Committee thought it was a recommendation to leave in,  
3 but I am concerned. As a Committee, we talked about  
4 no genetic exceptionalism as part of our last report.

5 It concerns me that this is diagnostic  
6 exceptionalism, which to me is not healthy for the  
7 long-term environment of diagnostics or personalized  
8 medicine, putting burden on what are today  
9 traditionally and have been the lowest-priced  
10 interventions in the healthcare arena and the lowest-  
11 margin interventions in the healthcare arena, and  
12 creating a burden that is not necessary. I am not  
13 clear how it corrects access.

14 DR. EVANS: Two things. I don't think is  
15 the forum to decide the pros and cons of this. But I  
16 would just say that one could also envision that such  
17 transparency would enable test developers to do a more  
18 efficacious job of figuring out whether they were in  
19 violation of licenses, et cetera. I don't think it is  
20 necessarily just a burden.

21 DR. ASPINALL: Yes, it might be. My concern  
22 is in terms of comparability with other parts of the

1 industry, for new start-up companies getting access to  
2 capital and public or private access to research  
3 dollars, and others. Putting a disproportionate  
4 burden on one part of the industry versus others will  
5 not help innovation.

6 DR. EVANS: I think those are things that  
7 should come out in the public comments. Marc.

8 DR. WILLIAMS: I think the other thing to  
9 recognize relating to this is we have to be cognizant  
10 in the discussion that multiplex testing is going to  
11 be a problematic issue. You can imagine in terms of  
12 the level of burden that if you have a multiplex test  
13 you could have a patent and license list that is  
14 longer than the labeling.

15 DR. EVANS: But again, the argument cuts the  
16 other way. If you want to develop a multiplex test,  
17 you are in big trouble if there isn't transparency in  
18 the field and you don't know what is covered by what.  
19 The concerns about multiplex testing I think are some  
20 of the most powerful in support of this, but again, if  
21 people are okay putting this out for comment we can  
22 then weigh those various types of arguments.

1 DR. AMOS: If the object is to make it more  
2 transparent, then why put the burden on the company to  
3 put it on their products? If you have a multiplex of  
4 100,000 gene segments, the packaging would be as big  
5 as the table.

6 You could do it on the website, but at the  
7 same time, if the object is to make it more  
8 transparent, then maybe we recommend to the HHS  
9 Secretary that some sort of central repository of that  
10 information should be made available.

11 DR. EVANS: Right. But somebody is going to  
12 have to put it in that central repository.

13 DR. AMOS: Somebody is going to have to put  
14 it in there and maintain it. That is going to be  
15 tough, too.

16 DR. EVANS: Again, those things can come up  
17 as we discuss them.

18 Filling data gaps. "In order to assess the  
19 extent to which gene patent or licensing arrangements  
20 may be affecting patient access to genetic tests, HHS  
21 should develop a voluntary reporting system to  
22 encourage researchers and medical practitioners who

1 order, use, or perform genetic tests to report such  
2 access problems. Given that patient access problems  
3 can occur for a number of reasons, it will be  
4 important for the reports to be verified and evaluated  
5 to be sure they can be attributed to the gene patent  
6 or licensing arrangements. For example, the reports  
7 may need to include evidence of patent enforcement  
8 actions, such as a cease-and-desist letter.

9 "It may be prudent to pilot-test and  
10 evaluate such a system through a demonstration program  
11 before committing to its full development."

12 Basically, one of the things we have been  
13 struggling with in this process is trying to corral  
14 what the perceived problems are and trying to figure  
15 out whether those perceptions are accurate. By having  
16 such a resource, there could be an ongoing forum that  
17 is centralized in order to bring to light things that  
18 people thought rose to the level of problems.

19 DR. ASPINALL: I'm not sure I can rephrase  
20 it in real time because I like the first sentence.  
21 Again, it presumes access problems as opposed to  
22 increased access as a result of this. So when it

1 starts out to say "may be affecting patient access,"  
2 it could be more or less.

3 DR. EVANS: We could say "In order to assess  
4 whether gene patents."

5 DR. ASPINALL: I think that has to be more  
6 neutral.

7 DR. EVANS: Yes, that's fine.

8 COL McLEAN: I would agree. I think if you  
9 are going to focus just on finding the problems you  
10 are not going to measure the access. You are just  
11 going to measure the problems. You may have really  
12 good effects or consequences of certain patents that  
13 you didn't anticipate, and so you would miss it.

14 DR. EVANS: I don't envision this as  
15 tackling the whole problem. I do see it, though, as a  
16 potential part of increased transparency, trying to  
17 again fill some of these gaps that exist.

18 DR. TEUTSCH: If you go up to the benefits  
19 of enhanced access, in most of the systems that we are  
20 talking about here do people tend to report problems,  
21 not successes? I'm trying to figure out what that  
22 means in practical terms.

1 DR. ASPINALL: I guess in terms of doing the  
2 report in a broad way I wanted to encourage people to  
3 represent enhanced access.

4 DR. TEUTSCH: No, I think that part is good.  
5 Then we have to figure out how does one capture that.  
6 I agree; we do want to do that. What concerns me is  
7 you are talking about voluntary reporting systems. It  
8 is like safety systems. They don't tell you that, I  
9 had a great success and there was no safety problem.  
10 They only tell you about when there are issues.

11 I'm just trying to figure out, if we are  
12 going to do that, how do you make that operational,  
13 which needs to be, usually, a more proactive approach.

14 DR. PRESSMAN: If the company people who are  
15 here would be willing to disclose something about  
16 volume, it would be very helpful for an understanding  
17 in so many ways: market size, access, how many people  
18 are using it. It could be assured in this process  
19 that the data would only be presented in aggregate to  
20 help preserve confidential company information.

21 DR. ASPINALL: First of all, it is not all  
22 company people. Most of the patents are actually

1 being held by universities. Some go out to the  
2 companies, but lots do not. I think we should just  
3 describe it as patent holders.

4 DR. TEUTSCH: Actually, you can get this  
5 information from a good claims data system that  
6 actually would tell you what tests were being done.

7 DR. ASPINALL: The problem is, as we found  
8 in the other report, you can't get it because of the  
9 CPT code system.

10 DR. TEUTSCH: Correct. That is all part of  
11 what needs to be improved. But if you could move to a  
12 system that actually captures it, you could actually  
13 monitor that.

14 DR. EVANS: Perhaps that is something we  
15 should consider as another, separate policy option.

16 DR. ASPINALL: I guess, Steve, in answer to  
17 your question -- and I'm not sure I have the perfect  
18 wording -- the wording should be more neutral to say  
19 filling data gaps and evaluating successes. It  
20 shouldn't be focused on looking for only the problems,  
21 first of all, in terms of the wording. Then part of  
22 the challenge with the public comment period is

1 ensuring that people get out to tell both sides of the  
2 story.

3 DR. EVANS: We can work on the wording a  
4 little to try to make it a little more neutral and  
5 then allow the public comments to refine it. Yes.

6 DR. WILLIAMS: I was just going to say, I  
7 heard somebody say maybe a new recommendation relating  
8 to the coding issues. I would just say don't make a  
9 new recommendation. Just reference where that has  
10 come up in previous report and say, we support the  
11 previous report's recommendation that coding would fix  
12 this problem.

13 DR. EVANS: That is a really good idea.

14 Again, in the theme of filling data gaps,  
15 "Under Bayh-Dole, recipients of federal grants,  
16 cooperative agreements, and contracts are required to  
17 report to federal agencies about inventions that  
18 result from federally funded research. Such reports  
19 are submitted through an online information management  
20 system called iEdison. The reports are considered  
21 proprietary and are not publicly available.

22 "NIH also requires recipients of NIH

1 funding, upon election of title to an invention, to  
2 report utilization data annually for that invention,  
3 including whether and how many exclusive and non-  
4 exclusive licenses have been granted, if any.

5 "Research agencies should explore using  
6 summary data from their respective federal fund  
7 agreements as a tool to help assess the extent to  
8 which exclusive licensing practices of identified  
9 patents may play a role in inhibiting patient access  
10 to diagnostic gene-based inventions.

11 "NIH also should explore whether iEdison  
12 data could be used to assess whether the licensing of  
13 genomic inventions has been conducted in accordance  
14 with the NIH's best practices." Yes.

15 DR. ASPINALL: Strike the word "inhibiting."  
16 "May play a role in patient access," so we understand  
17 positive or negative.

18 DR. EVANS: We can do that.

19 DR. WILLIAMS: Do you have any specific  
20 research agencies in mind?

21 DR. EVANS: No, I was hoping you might. I  
22 think that that is something that is going to need to

1 be explored. Which are the most applicable and  
2 efficacious ones. We didn't want to get too granular  
3 at this point. Why; what are your thoughts?

4 DR. WILLIAMS: Remembering what Reed has  
5 said, the more specific we can make the  
6 recommendations to the Secretary, the more likely that  
7 they are going to go forward. If we can have some  
8 feeling about whether this would best reside with AHRQ  
9 or something of that nature, we probably should say  
10 something like that.

11 DR. EVANS: There wasn't any consensus on  
12 the task force about that. I think that it is  
13 something we could add in here and we could  
14 specifically ask for comments about that. That might  
15 be reasonable to solicit that type of guidance.

16 DR. FITZGERALD: Just on that note, the  
17 easiest thing to do is put in parentheses after  
18 "research agencies," "(e.g. AHRQ and others?)" and let  
19 people suggest and give reasons for their suggestions.

20 DR. EVANS: NIH, I think, is what everybody  
21 was thinking of here, which might make the most sense.  
22 So we might want to put in parentheses "for example,

1 NIH, AHRQ, and others as recommended."

2 DR. ROHRBAUGH: Jim, I would just note that  
3 iEdison is not required. It is not required that  
4 people use iEdison. They may submit by iEdison; they  
5 may submit by other means.

6 DR. EVANS: Would you say it is the most  
7 commonly used?

8 DR. ROHRBAUGH: Yes.

9 DR. EVANS: What we can say is "through  
10 online information such as iEdison." We can fix that.  
11 Thank you.

12 "More data are needed to understand the  
13 landscape of gene patenting and the licensing  
14 arrangements that are being used to commercialize the  
15 inventions. The Secretary of HHS should develop a  
16 uniform system for data collection, including database  
17 structure and standardized terminology, or enhance the  
18 existing iEdison system and encourage HHS funding  
19 recipients to submit more data about inventions that,  
20 at the time they are patented and licensed, are  
21 reasonably anticipated to be associated with clinical  
22 genetic tests.

1           "The data elements that would be most  
2 useful," and then this continues on to the next slide.

3     I will back up.

4           "1) Whether the licensor of the inventor  
5 granted the licensee the rights to make and sell a  
6 clinical genetic test or provide a clinical service;

7           "2) The nature of the licensing agreement  
8 (for example, exclusive, co-exclusive, non-exclusive)  
9 and for licenses with some degree of exclusivity in  
10 the grant, information about the grant of license  
11 rights (i.e. fields of use, scope) and whether or not  
12 the license has non-financial performance incentives  
13 (diligence)."

14           It would be nice to get rid of some  
15 parentheses there.

16           "3) Patent and license timelines (dates of  
17 patent filing, publication, issuance, and license  
18 effective dates)

19           "4) The date of first reported sale of the  
20 genetic test or service and the periodic notations of  
21 whether the test or service remains on the market; and

22           "5) If possible, some measure of volume of

1 sales and number of tests or kits sold, even if such  
2 sales are not royalty bearing.

3 "Providers of the data should be consulted  
4 about the design of the database, the development of  
5 its standard terminology, and their perspectives on  
6 the burden and implications of reporting such data."

7 I will go back now to the first part of this  
8 rather long one. Marc.

9 DR. WILLIAMS: Just a clarification. Is  
10 iEdison then under HHS?

11 DR. EVANS: Somebody help me.

12 DR. ROHRBAUGH: iEdison was developed by  
13 NIH. It is an encrypted Web-based system that is  
14 optional. Many parties use it. Many universities use  
15 it. It has been adopted by many other agencies. Most  
16 of the R&D agencies in the federal government use  
17 iEdison for reporting inventions and other annual  
18 data.

19 DR. WILLIAMS: I guess the question I was  
20 asking is, administratively, in terms of the  
21 actionable item to revise and standardize iEdison, is  
22 that something that does reside under the Secretary's

1 purview. I don't know the answer to that question.

2 DR. EVANS: Yes, Bob. It sounds like it is.

3 DR. COOK-DEEGAN: That is my understanding  
4 of the history.

5 DR. EVANS: So, with regard to the data  
6 elements, do people have other data elements or do  
7 these seem like the types of data elements that are  
8 most useful?

9 DR. FITZGERALD: I have a quick question.  
10 None of this, I gather, is now put in the iEdison  
11 database; is that correct?

12 DR. EVANS: That is correct, I believe.

13 DR. COOK-DEEGAN: Some of it is.

14 DR. FITZGERALD: That is what I'm wondering.

15 DR. COOK-DEEGAN: None of us have ever seen  
16 it. At least I have never seen it. I'm pretty sure  
17 licensing data is in there.

18 DR. EVANS: To this extent?

19 DR. COOK-DEEGAN: Not to this level of  
20 detail. This part, No. 1, would be. Actually, not  
21 the genetic test part. Who the licensee is and the  
22 conditions of the license.

1 DR. LEONARD: From your comments, it sounds  
2 like this is not a public database.

3 DR. COOK-DEEGAN: That's right. It is not.

4 DR. LEONARD: Sarah is shaking her head no.  
5 It can't be a public database. If all this  
6 information is in there, who uses it? Do we want to  
7 make some recommendation about who should have access  
8 to this? Is it researchers by IRB approval and  
9 getting a grant? Who uses this? You put it all in  
10 there; then what?

11 DR. EVANS: Let's see. Is that addressed up  
12 here? The reports are proprietary, not publicly  
13 available. So they can't really be publicly  
14 available, is my understanding.

15 DR. LEONARD: So, who are we creating a  
16 database for?

17 DR. EVANS: I think for the NIH.

18 DR. COOK-DEEGAN: You are only asking for  
19 gathering of information. I presume there is going to  
20 be something about doing something with it and telling  
21 the world about what you have found out.

22 DR. EVANS: Right. I think that the idea

1 here would be that these types of data would be  
2 collected under the purview of HHS and would be  
3 available for as yet undefined individuals or  
4 organizations to analyze it for evidence of problems,  
5 et cetera.

6 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: There is a  
7 recommendation that this is created so HHS can have a  
8 periodic review of the data and report that to the  
9 public in an aggregate form?

10 DR. TEUTSCH: Go back to 3B, the last  
11 paragraph. There it talks about iEdison could be used  
12 to access the licensing and being able to do that  
13 assessment, which is really what you are asking about.

14 DR. EVANS: Right. "Should explore whether  
15 iEdison data could be used to assess whether the  
16 licensing of genomic inventions has been conducted in  
17 accordance."

18 DR. TEUTSCH: We will need to wordsmith it,  
19 but it looks like that analysis could be done out of  
20 that.

21 DR. EVANS: No other elements that people  
22 [have comments on]?

1 DR. AMOS: Jim, are you just trying to get  
2 to the point where there is somebody that is  
3 overseeing this and getting enough data to make it a  
4 report to the public where there is an instance of  
5 harm being done?

6 DR. EVANS: To try to coalesce data. To try  
7 to gather data in some centralized way by which  
8 problems could be enumerated and discovered.

9 DR. AMOS: In a way that proprietary  
10 information is not portrayed to the general public?

11 DR. EVANS: Right. In other words, there  
12 has to be some kind of firewall there. It is  
13 proprietary information. It can't just be a public --

14 DR. AMOS: Can't you put this all under one  
15 recommendation and just say that the HHS Secretary  
16 should develop a mechanism to do this, and then  
17 outline some of the things that you think are  
18 critical?

19 DR. EVANS: Yes, I think we could. It could  
20 be, for example, through iEdison, if that is the most  
21 facile way.

22 DR. AMOS: Without getting into exactly what

1 needs to be done, basically the gist of it would be to  
2 create a system for reporting back to the public where  
3 harm is being done.

4 DR. TEUTSCH: But as we have heard, it is  
5 not just the harms. It is to understand to what  
6 extent these uses that should have been done under the  
7 various federal granting processes are actually  
8 getting acted on and used. It is to see to what  
9 extent they are getting out and being used in a way  
10 that is consistent with the guidance that is already  
11 out there for good or not so that we don't have to  
12 have this discussion again if we don't know this  
13 information.

14 DR. EVANS: Especially as we go on to  
15 multiplex testing.

16 DR. AMOS: Basically, you want somebody to  
17 keep track of all this.

18 DR. EVANS: Exactly. Maybe we need to have  
19 a preamble that says it that way.

20 "The Secretary of HHS should establish an  
21 advisory board to provide ongoing advice about the  
22 public health impact of gene patenting and licensing

1 practices. The board could review new data collected  
2 on patient access problems and assess the extent to  
3 which they are caused by enforcement of intellectual  
4 property rights.

5 "The advisory board also could provide input  
6 on the implementation of any future policy changes,  
7 including any that might emerge as a consequence of  
8 this report."

9 Maybe we should somehow make that the start  
10 and change the wording so that makes sense. Good,  
11 good. We can change the order of that.

12 "Federal efforts to promote broad licensing  
13 and patient access:

14 "A) Federal agencies, including NIH, should  
15 promote wider adoption of the principles reflected in  
16 NIH Best Practices for the Licensing of Genomic  
17 Inventions and the OECD Guidelines for Licensing of  
18 Genetic Inventions, both of which encourage limited  
19 use of exclusive licensing for genetic/genomic  
20 inventions."

21 Now, I would anticipate that people are  
22 going to say there are no teeth to this, but I think

1 as we go on you will see that there are some emerging  
2 potential teeth. Comments? It is teething.

3 DR. WILLIAMS: I read through these but now  
4 I'm not specifically recalling. But when you say  
5 there are no teeth, there are actually huge teeth  
6 implied there in the sense that federal agencies  
7 reimburse a huge fraction of healthcare costs in this  
8 country. If there was something tied to reimbursement  
9 for tests relating to adherence to best practices --

10 DR. EVANS: Right. We don't go there yet.

11 DR. LEONARD: But it is not really the  
12 reimbursement agencies here. It is NIH giving future  
13 grants based on how they licensed whatever came out of  
14 research previously funded by NIH. That would highly  
15 motivate academic institutions.

16 DR. EVANS: Let me go on with this next one.

17 "Federal agencies, including NIH, should  
18 encourage wider use of AUTM's In the Public Interest:  
19 Nine Points to Consider in Licensing University  
20 Technology. Point Nos. 2 and 9 are particularly  
21 relevant for genetic tests. They state in part that  
22 exclusive licenses should be structured in a manner

1 that encourages technology development and use and in  
2 licensing arrangements institutions should 'consider  
3 including provisions that address unmet needs, such as  
4 those in neglected patient populations,' giving  
5 particular attention to improved diagnostics, among  
6 other technologies." Basically, a request to refine  
7 the Nine Points.

8 [No response.]

9 DR. EVANS: Either it is uncontroversial or  
10 everybody is completely confused.

11 "NIH should explore whether mechanisms such  
12 as patent pooling could facilitate the use of rapidly  
13 developing technologies for genetic tests that are  
14 dependent upon multiple licenses of patents."

15 This is one that works its way into every  
16 type of commission or committee that has ever looked  
17 at this. It usually hasn't gone very far, I think for  
18 some of the reasons brought up, for example, by  
19 Rochelle. But I do think that there is a lot of  
20 interest in patent pools and it is worth at least  
21 giving a nod to that or throwing that out there.

22 "Federal agencies should consider providing

1 more detailed guidance for gene-based clinical  
2 diagnostic inventions to encourage academic  
3 institutions to use terms and licensing agreements,  
4 such as due diligence clauses, to foster the  
5 availability and quality of clinical diagnostic tests  
6 and thereby reduce the likelihood that exclusivity  
7 associated with a license would lead to adverse  
8 effects on patient access.

9           "Taking steps likely to increase the number  
10 of insurers that reimburse for the test or improving  
11 the specificity and sensitivity of the test and  
12 enhancing knowledge of its clinical validity are  
13 examples of milestones that a licensee could be  
14 required to meet to earn or maintain license rights."

15           Lori might want to expand a little bit on  
16 this. The idea is that licenses are a lever which can  
17 be used and that the conditions of licenses can be  
18 manipulated, presumably, to create more benefit.

19           DR. ASPINALL: I understand the principle.  
20 Why, in the third line of (D) does it say "Encourage  
21 academic institutions"?

22           DR. EVANS: We had a lot of discussion about

1 the fact that it is academic institutions that issue  
2 most licenses because they own most of the patents.  
3 Now, it doesn't necessarily have to be made to look  
4 exclusively as though this is encouraging academic  
5 institutions.

6 DR. ASPINALL: In a way, it is the other  
7 way. We have academic institutions that don't  
8 license, and there are some that are inventors.

9 DR. EVANS: That makes sense. It would be  
10 silly to just narrow this down to academic  
11 institutions.

12 DR. ASPINALL: In reality, federal agencies  
13 may have more power.

14 DR. EVANS: I can't recall the exact  
15 discussion that revolved around this on the task force  
16 conference call, but that is what coming back to me.  
17 This had to do with the fact that HHS has power over  
18 universities through that mechanism.

19 DR. ASPINALL: I think we should clarify it  
20 either way. My key issue, especially as we are  
21 talking about transparency, is not to make an  
22 assumption that all companies are in one bucket and

1 all academic institutions are in another, or vice  
2 versa. We need to keep it broad. If it is meant to  
3 be NIH-granted institutions --

4 DR. EVANS: I think "patent holders" would  
5 be a better term.

6 DR. PRESSMAN: The origin? I think the  
7 origin is just Bayh-Dole and that preamble that talks  
8 about protecting the public against the non-use. That  
9 is the origin.

10 DR. EVANS: That is right. Would it still  
11 make sense to say "patent holders"?

12 DR. PRESSMAN: Sure. They are non-academic  
13 grantees.

14 DR. EVANS: Bayh-Dole doesn't affect them if  
15 they haven't used federal funds.

16 DR. ASPINALL: There are grantees that are  
17 not academic institutions. We need to keep it broad.

18 DR. EVANS: "Patent holders" I think would  
19 be good. Marc.

20 DR. WILLIAMS: One minor thing here, which  
21 is just for consistency's sake, would be to replace  
22 "quality" with "utility" just so we are consistent.

1           The second thing is, I would be reluctant to  
2 articulate the insurance reimbursement here, because  
3 that implies that there is actually a rational process  
4 that involves evidence for insurance reimbursement.

5           [Laughter.]

6           DR. WILLIAMS: I work in the insurance  
7 industry. I can say this, all right? The reality is  
8 that the decisions that are made are frequently not  
9 related to evidence but are related to contracts and  
10 decisions by employers in terms of what they want to  
11 cover and what they don't want to cover. So I'm not  
12 sure that that adds much to the point there.

13           DR. EVANS: Couldn't that be a point of  
14 leverage?

15           DR. WILLIAMS: For whom?

16           DR. EVANS: For individuals who are seeking  
17 to maintain or obtain a license. Why exclude that  
18 from this?

19           DR. WILLIAMS: I don't understand how it is  
20 a lever. Their business interests are to reimburse as  
21 many people as possible.

22           DR. EVANS: Right. But if they are

1 unsuccessful for various reasons, this adds more  
2 leverage, more pressure. There must be a reason for  
3 this. Why is there not third-party reimbursement.

4 I understand what you are saying, that their  
5 business interests are generally aligned.

6 DR. WILLIAMS: But I'm saying the tying of  
7 performance to insurance companies' decisions where  
8 those insurance company decisions do not rest solely  
9 on the evidence around a given test or product is  
10 really not fair.

11 It is just not fair. If an employer says we  
12 are not paying for genetic tests, they are not paying  
13 for genetic tests. It doesn't matter if it is a good  
14 test, bad test, or indifferent test. They just don't  
15 pay for it.

16 DR. PRESSMAN: If I could just make a case  
17 why it is good to maintain an option. Arguably,  
18 perhaps the public is better served this way than they  
19 are by an infinite number of non-exclusives, where  
20 perhaps no one has an incentive to go up against a  
21 recalcitrant insurer. This way, if you got four or  
22 five players under co-exclusive, maybe you actually

1 have an incentive. Maybe this would be good for the  
2 public.

3 DR. WILLIAMS: I think we are mixing apples  
4 and oranges here. I really think that that is an  
5 issue of coverage and reimbursement. It is not an  
6 issue relating to patenting.

7 I think you are trying to get at the fact  
8 that we want to accumulate evidence that that is a  
9 good thing and making a stronger case for clinical  
10 validity and utility is a good thing. There are a lot  
11 of people that are going to come along and say, yes,  
12 this is something we want to pay for because it is a  
13 good thing.

14 I don't know. I just don't understand the  
15 mechanism of this relating to an action item.

16 DR. EVANS: I have two responses. One is  
17 that we could put in there "for example" and then we  
18 could let things fall out as people make comments.

19 My other question would be that many aspects  
20 of criteria that licensing might be pegged to are not  
21 completely under control of the individuals doing the  
22 test. For example, improving specificity and

1 sensitivity. To some extent, that is a simple  
2 biological and technological obstacle that might not  
3 be able to be improved.

4 I think that to some extent the devil would  
5 be in the details of those particular parameters that  
6 the licensing is pegged to. I'm not sure that it is  
7 that different from those others.

8 I think we should have it in there and then  
9 have this out at the meeting where we decide. See  
10 what the public says. See what people weigh in. If  
11 it makes sense to take it out, then do it. But I  
12 think that there is at least some feeling around the  
13 table that it is worth leaving in for now. Mara.

14 DR. ASPINALL: I would agree.

15 DR. EVANS: Why don't we leave it in for  
16 now. You can make your case when we meet again.

17 DR. WILLIAMS: That's fine. What I want at  
18 the next meeting when we make our case is, define for  
19 me the mechanism of how that would work. I need to  
20 understand how measuring insurance reimbursement  
21 relates to licensing. Talk about the devil being in  
22 the details. I just don't understand it.

1 DR. EVANS: We will talk about that.

2 DR. FITZGERALD: Could we just say that we  
3 will address in specific the retort from the person in  
4 Utah who is going to write in about this?

5 DR. EVANS: I don't think we should be quite  
6 that detailed.

7 Now, licensing policies governing federally  
8 funded research to facilitate access. This is why NIH  
9 is focused on this.

10 "NIH should explore the feasibility of  
11 making compliance with the NIH Best Practices for the  
12 Licensing of Genomic Inventions as an important  
13 consideration in future grant awards."

14 This is where you start to get into some  
15 explicit teeth. The NIH has promulgated these  
16 guidelines or best practices, but they are sitting  
17 there. What we would be saying is, let's use them.

18 "The Secretary of HHS should request an  
19 executive order clarifying the authority of HHS under  
20 the Bayh-Dole Act to ensure that the goals of the  
21 statute are being fulfilled in the context of genetic  
22 diagnostic tests in the manner reflected in the NIH

1 Best Practices for Licensing of Genomic Inventions.

2 "The Secretary of HHS should request an  
3 executive order clarifying the authority of HHS under  
4 the Bayh-Dole Act to require a grantee or contractor  
5 to offer only non-exclusive licensing of DNA-based  
6 inventions for diagnostic fields of use, for example,  
7 by making the requirement a term and condition of  
8 award."

9 DR. ASPINALL: I don't know where to start.

10 DR. EVANS: Remember, before you say  
11 anything, these are a range of options that are put  
12 out there. We are not really debating the merits of  
13 implementing these at this point. We are just saying,  
14 okay, are these reasonable to go out as a range of  
15 options. They are certainly ones that have been  
16 discussed.

17 DR. ASPINALL: But as we get to them, and in  
18 my looking at them, I'm not sure it is fair to call  
19 them a range of options. We don't have options on the  
20 other end that say they should ensure that for most  
21 innovation and quickest access that all licenses  
22 should be exclusive.

1 DR. EVANS: We could do that if you want.

2 I think that we already have a system in  
3 which people are free to engage in exclusive  
4 licensing. Do you think it is more than just a  
5 rhetorical device to put in something saying we should  
6 make all licenses exclusive?

7 DR. ASPINALL: Two pieces. I'm not sure it  
8 is fair to say it is a range of options in terms of a  
9 full range. It is a range on one end of the spectrum.

10 DR. EVANS: It is a range. We didn't say a  
11 full range.

12 DR. ASPINALL: It is not the full range,  
13 which I respect. I'm not saying it has to be, but I  
14 don't think it is a full range of options from A to Z.

15 DR. EVANS: We didn't say it was.

16 DR. ASPINALL: You said "a range of options"  
17 a few times, implying that.

18 DR. EVANS: If the public wants to say  
19 everything should be exclusively licensed and we get  
20 an avalanche of comments like that, then I think we  
21 should consider that.

22 DR. ASPINALL: I'm sure we will consider

1 whatever the public says on either end of that.

2           One question I would have is, is there any  
3 comparable regulation, executive order or otherwise,  
4 where HHS would step in and say how --

5           DR. EVANS: Under Bayh-Dole you can. It is  
6 in Bayh-Dole that there are provisions for march-in.

7           DR. ASPINALL: Right. But to this extent  
8 and requiring only non-exclusive --

9           DR. EVANS: I think there are more dramatic  
10 examples of this. Look at the Ganske-Frist bill.  
11 Rochelle.

12           DR. DREYFUSS: I understood the range of  
13 options to be the range of options that flowed out of  
14 what the case studies show. What the case studies  
15 show is that exclusive licensing is sometimes a  
16 problem. The case studies don't show that non-  
17 exclusive licensing is a problem. So it seems to me  
18 that it makes a lot of sense to say that maybe we  
19 should put more teeth into the guidelines.

20           I think there has also been evidence that  
21 hasn't been picked up explicitly in the case studies  
22 but implicitly, where universities have a tendency to

1 give exclusive licenses without really thinking hard  
2 about it. These guidelines have existed for a while  
3 now. These Nine Points have existed for a while now.  
4 The better universities, who are licensing non-  
5 exclusively, don't seem to be having a problem with  
6 that.

7           Yet there are still some small universities  
8 that just don't seem to have the backbone to go up  
9 against the companies that want exclusive licenses.  
10 If this does nothing else, it will give these  
11 universities the option to say, we are going to lose  
12 our grants if we give in to this. I think it stiffens  
13 their spine in a way that the case studies suggest  
14 they need.

15           DR. ASPINALL: I guess I would say two  
16 things. One is, I will go back to not clarifying and  
17 generalizing small and large, backbone or not  
18 backbone. There are small universities that have had  
19 a lot of backbone and won or lost, and there are some  
20 very large universities that have said they don't want  
21 to go there. I don't think it is the size.

22           DR. DREYFUSS: No, I agree with that.

1 DR. ASPINALL: It is a leadership and a  
2 discussion within the university for them to make  
3 their decisions.

4 DR. DREYFUSS: I agree with that.

5 DR. ASPINALL: So I don't want to generalize  
6 it. But as you describe what is in there, I take  
7 offense to generalizing based on how they do it. HHS  
8 can certainly do it for the grantees and contractors,  
9 but I think the issue is to provide access, not  
10 necessarily on how they provide that access. I was  
11 more comfortable one step back on the last one that  
12 says access is a key issue, not telling them how to do  
13 their business.

14 DR. EVANS: That's fine. People are going  
15 to have different opinions on this, and that is why we  
16 are putting these out there.

17 Just before we move on to the next one, I  
18 would agree with what Rochelle said. I think these do  
19 flow from the lessons we learned. People are free to  
20 submit other ideas.

21 Another possibility that we can engage in  
22 that is on the table is we do nothing. We may in the

1 end feel that everything is working fine and there are  
2 no future problems and we don't have to do anything.  
3 That is in the nature of possibility.

4 DR. ASPINALL: That is what I was going to  
5 say. To me, the case studies said there were  
6 sometimes problems, sometimes there weren't problems.

7 DR. EVANS: But again, I would amplify what  
8 Rochelle said. I don't think we saw anywhere that,  
9 "Boy, exclusive licensing is the way to go." We  
10 didn't see any evidence there are lots of problems  
11 from non-exclusive licensing and that there are lots  
12 of benefits from exclusive licensing.

13 DR. ASPINALL: I thought in the BRCA versus  
14 HNPCC we saw that, did we not?

15 DR. EVANS: Not at all. Anyway, we need to  
16 move on.

17 DR. DREYFUSS: I think we should change it  
18 to put in a presumption of non-exclusive licensing.  
19 There might be some places where the costs of  
20 developing the tests are really, really high.

21 DR. EVANS: That is a very good point. I  
22 have been trying to figure out how to work that in.

1 Kevin.

2 DR. FITZGERALD: Sometimes I get the  
3 impression what you are saying is that we would like  
4 to do No. 1 and No. 2 and No. 3 and No. 4 and No. 5,  
5 and other times you are saying we would like to do A  
6 or B or C.

7 DR. EVANS: Right. We experimented with  
8 that in the task force. That is why I made that over-  
9 the-top admonition at the start to remember that many  
10 of these will be mutually exclusive.

11 DR. FITZGERALD: All I'm doing is clarifying  
12 for the public which ones are "or" and which ones are  
13 "and."

14 DR. EVANS: It is not even that simple  
15 because there are recommendations in No. 2 that  
16 wouldn't be compatible with something in No. 8. It is  
17 not a simple or/and in close proximity.

18 What people have to understand, and we are  
19 going to take great pains to illustrate this at the  
20 start, is that some of these recommendations are  
21 mutually incompatible. We recognize that. But our  
22 job, when we meet again after public comment, will be

1 to reconcile and make sure that they are internally  
2 consistent. Marc.

3 DR. WILLIAMS: I just wanted to point out  
4 for (B) and (C) here that we have in many of our  
5 recommendations asked for clarification of statute in  
6 terms of what really falls under the purview of HHS  
7 and what doesn't. I think that these are very  
8 appropriate. I don't see these as necessarily loaded  
9 because I don't think clarification of authority means  
10 that there is then a will to exert authority that is  
11 defined.

12 I think we do need to understand where HHS  
13 can operate within its scope and where it is really  
14 out of scope.

15 DR. EVANS: I agree. This has been a  
16 nebulous black box.

17 DR. WILLIAMS: Exactly. These are very  
18 important recommendations, from my perspective.

19 DR. ROHRBAUGH: Jim, I would just point out  
20 my concern is that, in (C), the Best Practices don't  
21 say "Never exclusive license." It says the exclusive  
22 license should be tailored. There may be cases where

1 a very narrow exclusive use, like exclusivity for a  
2 proprietary format that the company already has, would  
3 not be objectionable.

4 DR. EVANS: I think that is a really  
5 important point. I think Rochelle's issue of  
6 presumption might get to that. But I couldn't agree  
7 more.

8 DR. WILLIAMS: And for all the rare  
9 diseases.

10 DR. EVANS: Right. That is the classic  
11 example.

12 "The Secretary of HHS, in collaboration with  
13 other departments, should commission a study to  
14 evaluate and compare how federal agencies have managed  
15 government-owned DNA-based inventions with diagnostic  
16 fields of use," again to look at how these things have  
17 been used.

18 "The Secretary of HHS, in collaboration with  
19 other departments, should commission a study of how  
20 agencies have interpreted and applied the Bayh-Dole  
21 Act with respect to the application of the statute's  
22 march-in provisions."

1           This focuses on USPTO policy and trying to  
2 clarify some of the issues inherent in that. "The  
3 Secretary of HHS should recommend that the Secretary  
4 of Commerce."

5           So we are recommending that one secretary  
6 recommend to another, which I will freely admit is a  
7 little bit cumbersome. Let us know if you can think  
8 of [another way]. It's just that we can't say  
9 something to the Secretary of Commerce, and USPTO  
10 doesn't report to HHS. Yet this is a very important  
11 issue with regard to gene patents and licensing. I  
12 don't know if there is a more streamlined way to do  
13 that.

14           "A) Establish an advisory committee to  
15 provide advice about scientific and technological  
16 developments related to genetic tests and technologies  
17 that may inform its examination of patent applications  
18 and other proceedings;

19           "B) Gather together in a manner analogous to  
20 the Utility Guidelines non-obviousness guidelines to  
21 assist USPTO personnel in examining patent  
22 applications on nucleic acids and genetic diagnostics,

1 particularly those applications seeking patent  
2 protection for human DNA sequences and/or genes for  
3 diagnostic purposes analogous to the Utility  
4 Guidelines published in 2001."

5 I'm going to talk about (C) in a second.  
6 So, comments on (A) and (B). Yes.

7 MR. LeGUYADER: I'm going to comment on (B)  
8 that we probably would want to wait for Cubin to come  
9 out. I'm speaking on behalf of the Patent Office now.  
10 We probably don't have enough information to craft  
11 guidelines specifically to tell our examiners what is  
12 or isn't obviousness until Cubin comes out, which is  
13 really a seminal case.

14 It is about a broad claim to a gene where  
15 the Board of Appeals at the Patent Office said that it  
16 is not patentable, it is obvious, using KSR and KSR-  
17 style language straight from that decision.

18 So we would want to wait to see that Cubin  
19 really gets affirmed. Then we will have some really  
20 clear guidance on how to deal with the obviousness.

21 DR. EVANS: It might be, you are saying,  
22 that after that case is decided we really wouldn't

1 need something like this?

2 MR. LeGUYADER: No, I think (B) is a very  
3 good recommendation. I think that it would be good to  
4 say something about Cubin. The Office will want to  
5 craft new guidelines based on the guidance developed  
6 from Cubin once that is decided.

7 DR. EVANS: "After the decision has been  
8 rendered in Cubin we should gather together."

9 MR. LeGUYADER: Yes.

10 DR. ASPINALL: What is the timing?

11 MR. LeGUYADER: Oral arguments are coming up  
12 this month. I don't know what the Federal Circuit  
13 has.

14 DR. EVANS: Is that going to be in Polly  
15 Newman's court?

16 MR. LeGUYADER: I don't really know off the  
17 top of my head. Now, you have Klaussen, which is a  
18 diagnostic assay that oral arguments were heard in  
19 July and we haven't heard anything yet. It has been  
20 almost a year since oral arguments have been heard.  
21 Sometimes the CFC will sit on things for quite a  
22 while.

1           Then, for (C), there are really three cases.  
2     There is the Prometheus case, Arad-AR AID, and then  
3     there is also Klaussen. There are three comments in  
4     Bilski that talk about whether or not these kind of  
5     assays and diagnostics are truly patent-eligible  
6     subject matter. They talk about preemption.

7           There are really three cases that are  
8     currently sitting with the Federal Circuit that have  
9     not yet been decided, Klaussen being the oldest. They  
10    were probably waiting on Bilski. They were probably  
11    waiting for the guidance on Bilski. Those are the  
12    three you will want to wait for to develop guidelines.  
13    You don't want to develop the guidelines on Bilski.

14           DR. EVANS: Good. I think we should work  
15    those in and say after decisions have been rendered in  
16    those cases.

17           Let's discuss (C) for a moment. For  
18    everybody here, Bilski was a recently rendered  
19    decision that addresses, somewhat obliquely, the issue  
20    of association patents.

21           Remember, for example, the most famous of  
22    these for our purposes is probably the Metabolife

1 case, in which there was a request to grant cert to  
2 the U.S. Supreme Court to decide on whether an  
3 association of a high homocysteine level with Vitamin  
4 B12 deficiency could itself be patented. The court  
5 did not grant cert, but a dissenting opinion that was  
6 written by [Justice] Breyer said they should have  
7 because of the implications, at least in part, for  
8 medical diagnostics and for medical practice.

9 Bilski is a case that was just decided.  
10 People in this room could speak more eloquently about  
11 it than me. Perhaps Rochelle could. It at least  
12 begins to suggest that association patents are not  
13 going to be looked on real favorably, but there are  
14 other cases pending that might influence that.

15 I think that there is significant feeling  
16 about this in the medical community as a whole. We  
17 heard, for example, Mike Watson a few minutes ago talk  
18 about how association patents could have a chilling  
19 effect on the practice of medicine in general.

20 I'm just going to give you a quick preview.  
21 The next recommendation or draft proposed  
22 recommendation is to prohibit association patenting.

1 That is just the background on that for people, if  
2 that makes sense.

3 Are people generally okay with having these  
4 out there in the draft proposal? Especially the  
5 mentions of those pending cases.

6 MR. LeGUYADER: I just want to mention one  
7 thing. Your very last comment and the next slide  
8 talking about prohibiting patenting of diagnostic  
9 types of assays, that potentially would have a very  
10 chilling effect on the biotech industry. That is  
11 really a very large part of their patent portfolio,  
12 whether or not they are enforced. That needs to be  
13 considered if you are going to go out with this as a  
14 recommendation.

15 DR. EVANS: Yes. We are now actually  
16 getting into some of the ones that will prove most  
17 controversial and where people will have the most  
18 ardently held opinions.

19 But before we go on with that, it sounds  
20 like Mike and Marc.

21 DR. AMOS: I just think that we need to make  
22 sure that the language that we use is something that

1 the Secretary can actually do something with. I don't  
2 think he has the authority to change patent law or  
3 even recommend necessarily to the USPTO or to the  
4 Department of Commerce that they do that. That is a  
5 legal matter.

6 DR. EVANS: I think there are a couple  
7 mechanisms by which to do that. One would be a  
8 statutory remedy for that. One would be a statute  
9 that addresses association patents.

10 DR. AMOS: When you say "prohibiting  
11 association patents," I don't think --

12 DR. EVANS: We are getting there with the  
13 next one. I think developing guidelines is something  
14 that can be done. Guidelines can be developed on  
15 patentable subject matter in the wake of these cases.

16 MR. LeGUYADER: Absolutely. We could do  
17 everything in this slide. In fact, we are going to.  
18 We have our eyes very keenly on the Federal Circuit to  
19 see what the decisions are. We are obligated to  
20 follow the law based on those decisions. Therefore,  
21 we will have to develop guidelines and train our  
22 examiners once that law comes out.

1 DR. EVANS: Now we get into ones that are,  
2 again, a little more controversial, I'm sure.

3 "The Secretary of HHS should work within the  
4 administration to encourage support for legislative  
5 change." Here is where we are talking about seeking  
6 statutory changes. "The following are potential  
7 options to consider.

8 "A) Prohibit patenting of an association of  
9 a particular genotype with a disease or disorder."  
10 Again, I'm not asking whether you think that should be  
11 done or not. What we are talking about here is  
12 putting that out there for public comment as a  
13 possible option. It is certainly one that is out  
14 there in the ether. Yes.

15 DR. WILLIAMS: This just is an operational  
16 question for the next time we get together after we  
17 receive public comments. I think we can fairly well  
18 predict the public comments that we are going to get.

19 We are going to get a lot on one side and a lot on  
20 the other side, which means that we are going to be in  
21 the position of having to adjudicate those.

22 So we really don't have a sense about

1 whether this is a good thing or a bad thing going into  
2 it.

3 DR. EVANS: Oh, I think some of us have a  
4 sense.

5 DR. WILLIAMS: Yes, I know that. But I  
6 suspect if we went around the table, we would have a  
7 bunch of people on one side and a bunch of people on  
8 the other side.

9 DR. EVANS: That's why, from the start this  
10 topic, I see as maybe the most difficult and  
11 contentious that the Secretary's Committee has  
12 addressed. When you think about some of our big  
13 topics like genetic discrimination, that was pretty  
14 much "mom and apple pie." It was pretty hard for  
15 people to get up there and say in no uncertain terms  
16 that we should engage in genetic discrimination.

17 I think that this is difficult. This is  
18 very difficult. Very reasonable people have different  
19 views on these things. It is going to be hard. I'm  
20 not sure how to make it easier, but we are going to  
21 have to sit down and figure out what to do.

22 DR. WILLIAMS: My point is that if we know

1 ahead of time where things sit, which is there is  
2 going to be polarization and we know that the public  
3 comments are going to be polarized, would it make more  
4 sense to pull this out until we can have --

5 DR. EVANS: Not at all. I think we need the  
6 public's comments.

7 DR. WILLIAMS: No, I don't think the public  
8 comment is going to solve anything for us. Are we  
9 going to weigh the comments for one side or the other?  
10 I think we are just going to see a bunch on both  
11 sides. I don't see how that helps us in terms of  
12 operationalizing this.

13 DR. EVANS: Just because we think we know  
14 what the public is going to say doesn't mean we know.  
15 I think it would be presumptuous of us to come out  
16 with a recommendation when we have not asked the  
17 public. In fact, it is not the way we can operate.

18 DR. WILLIAMS: I'm not saying we make a  
19 recommendation without it. I'm saying that putting  
20 something out there that says our default position is  
21 we are going to prohibit all --

22 DR. EVANS: But I don't know if that is our

1 default position. We haven't had that discussion.

2 DR. WILLIAMS: It looks like it. That is  
3 the issue. You say that "The following potential  
4 options are," and the options that you give there are  
5 very punitive options. They are not balanced options.

6 DR. EVANS: How would you remedy that?

7 DR. WILLIAMS: That is what I'm saying. We  
8 need to decide that before we send that out. We as a  
9 group need to decide.

10 DR. FITZGERALD: One possible remedy would  
11 be, like we have done in the past when we have hit  
12 these gridlock issues, is to step back and then say,  
13 "The Secretary should form a group to look into the  
14 issue," providing therefore the variety of options.

15 DR. EVANS: That is just punting it. We are  
16 not going to make a decision.

17 DR. FITZGERALD: No, we can't. We don't  
18 have the stuff to make the decision. Or, just stand  
19 up and say that there is gridlock on this. I don't  
20 know.

21 DR. EVANS: I think part of this is trying  
22 to get across to the public that this is an option.

1 It has certainly been an option. We are not the first  
2 to raise this option, by any means. As you will see  
3 in the next slide or two, there are options that are  
4 even more inflammatory. But I think that they need to  
5 be out there as options. Yes.

6 DR. KECKLER: Why is this section distinct.

7 It is distinct I think not necessarily because it is  
8 controversial. The concern would be what has been  
9 raised before about these policy options, which is  
10 that they flow from the case studies as potential  
11 remedies to that.

12 Can the same be said of all of the options  
13 that are proposed in this section? I certainly don't  
14 feel that about the most severe ones. They might be  
15 right or wrong, but in either case they don't flow  
16 from what the task force has developed in the case  
17 studies. I think that that is what raises the concern  
18 about some elements at least of this section.

19 DR. EVANS: I would agree with you that the  
20 one that probably flows the least is 7A. Let's come  
21 back to that. Rochelle.

22 DR. DREYFUSS: I think this one does flow

1 very directly from what we have seen. I think one of  
2 the things that the case studies show is that patents  
3 are not the biggest motivator of doing these genetic  
4 tests. The case studies also show that whether there  
5 are patents on the basic association or not on the  
6 basic association, it is still possible to get patents  
7 on the end product, which is the thing that costs the  
8 most.

9 I actually do think that this possibility is  
10 raised very much by the case studies. I think it  
11 would be odd to put in all these other policy options  
12 and not give the public an opportunity to comment on  
13 this particular one. This is the one obvious answer  
14 if you think that there is any impediment to access to  
15 genetic testing.

16 DR. EVANS: We talked a lot in the task  
17 force conference calls about, gosh, should we have  
18 this in, should we have that in. One of the things we  
19 felt is that if there are things floating around out  
20 there that indeed -- as we will see in the next slide  
21 or two -- have actually been introduced into  
22 legislation, it would be rather remiss of us to not

1 include these in possible recommendations. We are  
2 supposed to look at this whole landscape. Joseph.

3 DR. TELFAIR: Actually, I would agree with  
4 the last statement and also with the admonishment that  
5 we really need to consider in advance if we can. We  
6 already have a device that we have used here, which is  
7 a preamble.

8 It seems to me that this section begs for a  
9 preamble, if for no other reason than as a  
10 clarification and a reference back. I think we have a  
11 clear understanding where this directly flows from,  
12 but by the time you get to this in the review and in  
13 public comment, you may not necessarily have that  
14 level of recollection and consideration.

15 For just very practical reasons, I think it  
16 is really important to just have this here. You  
17 should have options that are going to create some  
18 division, but you also want to make it a utilitarian  
19 document in the sense that you just don't want people  
20 to react to this. You want them to give you a very  
21 thoughtful set of recommendations that we could  
22 consider.

1 DR. EVANS: I like the idea of perhaps a  
2 preamble that couches this. Debra, I think you are  
3 next.

4 DR. LEONARD: Marc, I think it is wrong to  
5 presuppose what responses the SACGHS will be getting  
6 back from people. I know in my opinion this (A) would  
7 be throwing the baby out with the bath water because  
8 we are thinking only about genetic testing. This  
9 would really screw up PhRMA, and I don't think we want  
10 to do this. There are ways that you can do that  
11 without messing up PhRMA.

12 So you may be surprised at the responses you  
13 get back to this 8A even from people who are pro-  
14 availability of gene patents for diagnostic testing.

15 DR. WILLIAMS: I guess the point I'm trying  
16 to make is, the position that we are articulating here  
17 I think is clearly at one extreme. So, is the intent  
18 of this to be deliberately provocative.

19 DR. LEONARD: No.

20 DR. WILLIAMS: Let me finish. You obviously  
21 have an emotional investment in this. I'm just  
22 reflecting as someone that is reading this.

1           I think I would very clearly look at that  
2 and say this is no different than when the Republican  
3 National Committee sends me a survey about what I  
4 think. It is all in how the questions are asked. If  
5 the question is, here is a possible option prohibiting  
6 that, I think you at least have to say that we are  
7 putting these out as intentionally extreme positions  
8 to solicit comment. If we were to do that, then I  
9 could perhaps live with this.

10           DR. EVANS: As I said at the start like six  
11 times, this is a range of options. I would ardently  
12 tell you that we are not trying to be provocative.  
13 Nobody is trying to be provocative. You may find this  
14 provocative. Others may find that an exceptionally  
15 reasonable policy option.

16           Again, I don't think that we can ignore  
17 policy options that have been discussed that many  
18 people perceive as problems. If you look at the  
19 association patent issue, these types of things have  
20 been discussed a lot.

21           I would take exception to the idea that we  
22 are trying to be provocative. We are not. We are

1 trying to put out a range of options. I completely  
2 agree with you that we have to make it very clear to  
3 people that this is a range of options, we are not  
4 wedded to any of these, and we want to get people's  
5 comments.

6 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: I think that maybe  
7 we can put a preamble, as recommended earlier, that  
8 can address some of these issues. But I think we need  
9 to offer the range of options and, again, give the  
10 public the opportunity to comment on this.

11 DR. EVANS: Right. Mara.

12 DR. ASPINALL: Two comments, one on Andrea's  
13 comment and going back to the range of options. I  
14 still have a problem with that. If we wanted to truly  
15 have a broad range of options, one of them should be  
16 reinforcing the current patent system and ensuring  
17 that exclusive licenses are easily granted and can be  
18 used on a regular basis.

19 DR. EVANS: I think that would be  
20 reasonable.

21 DR. ASPINALL: Then, to me, it is a range of  
22 options. To Marc's point -- and naturally, I agree

1 with Marc -- the way it sounds it tacitly implies that  
2 this is the straw man that SACGHS is throwing out. I  
3 think the survey example is a good one. I actually  
4 happen to think it is provocative, but even if you  
5 didn't, it implies this is the straw man that we are  
6 starting with and this is the base that we are only  
7 putting in sand now, not concrete. I'm not ready or  
8 comfortable to do that.

9 DR. EVANS: Would people be okay with  
10 putting in an option just like what she said, that we  
11 should maintain the status quo in which exclusive  
12 licenses are frequently sought?

13 DR. ASPINALL: That is the middle of the  
14 range. The further end of the range is saying to  
15 reinforce the system as the best way to get innovative  
16 tests.

17 DR. EVANS: I think that is nuts, but if you  
18 really want that in there. I think that would be seen  
19 as a straw man. There are very few people who  
20 advocate that we should have nothing but exclusive  
21 licenses.

22 DR. ASPINALL: That gets, then, to Marc's

1 other point, made three times today, that I agree  
2 with. Are we here to reflect the public view and hear  
3 the public view in a way that we have 60/40 or 70/30,  
4 or are we here to listen to it and then vote with our  
5 own opinions on doing this.

6 DR. EVANS: Well, I would hope that we are  
7 listening to the public for a reason.

8 DR. ASPINALL: Right. We are listening to  
9 the public, but ultimately, if 90 percent of the  
10 public comes in with one viewpoint, are we here to  
11 represent that we heard 90 percent of the views on one  
12 side and say, I feel the 10 percent side but 90  
13 percent of the people came to tell us they disagreed?

14 DR. TEUTSCH: I don't think we are here at  
15 any point to do vote counting of the public or the  
16 comments that we get. We are here to find out what we  
17 think in our collective judgment is the best way to  
18 ensure that effective technologies are available to  
19 patients. We should be looking at the range of  
20 options and listening to them. It is not a straw  
21 poll. If one person has an extraordinarily compelling  
22 point of view, we need to listen to it.

1           But it seems to me that is what we are here  
2 to do. Although we represent a broad range of  
3 disciplines, I hope nobody in the room feels that they  
4 are representing the company they work for or the  
5 academic institution they work for. We are here as a  
6 group of collective individuals trying to provide our  
7 best advice on a thorny set of issues.

8           We should make sure that the recommendations  
9 that we lay out here as potential options are the kind  
10 of things that we think are potentially viable and  
11 that we should seek comment on. Then, after we have  
12 gone through the process, we will have another rich  
13 discussion and vote. We just need to decide today  
14 what are the kinds of things that we want to lay on  
15 the table because we think that they are within the  
16 reasonable realm of possibility that we are going to  
17 solicit comments on.

18           DR. EVANS: I'm fine if people want to do  
19 this. I'm fine having something in here, if that is  
20 the consensus, that is more ardent about maintaining  
21 the status quo. That is great. I don't want to be  
22 seen as provocative. I want to be seen as, we are

1 considering all options.

2 DR. TEUTSCH: Kevin.

3 DR. FITZGERALD: In light of what you just  
4 said, Steve, and what Rochelle was saying, I think the  
5 preamble that we were talking should say, "Looking at  
6 the results gleaned from the case studies with the  
7 goal," as you just mentioned, "of making these  
8 technologies available to patients." Then you just  
9 say, "The best option for statutory change is," and  
10 then you list your possibilities.

11 That takes away the idea that you are  
12 putting forward something from this Committee as the  
13 best option. What you are saying is, here is our  
14 list. I don't know if this is the whole list that you  
15 would want. But one of them obviously would be to  
16 prohibit patenting of association to particular genes.  
17 There I think you would have to be clear it is an  
18 "or." You would have that preamble.

19 DR. ASPINALL: You would still have the  
20 status quo or something on there.

21 DR. FITZGERALD: That's right. Yes.

22 DR. ASPINALL: I'm happy with that

1 compromise.

2 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: I agree with that,  
3 too.

4 DR. EVANS: Mike is next.

5 DR. AMOS: I just want to say, I think there  
6 are profound economic implications in all this that  
7 have not been taken into consideration. Our colleague  
8 said there would be a chilling effect on the biotech  
9 industry.

10 I want to get back to Kevin's comment that  
11 maybe we should recommend that a more expert group  
12 look at this. With all due respect to everyone's  
13 expertise around the table, we are not economists.  
14 Perhaps that should be part of the recommendation.  
15 What are the really global aspects. To Debra's point,  
16 how will our recommendations on diagnostics affect  
17 other aspects of the healthcare industry.

18 I think you have done a great job of taking  
19 a look at this from a patient advocacy and laboratory  
20 perspective. But I think there are a lot of other  
21 things that need to be taken into consideration. For  
22 us to really put a stake in the ground and say that

1 these are the only options I think would be a mistake.

2 DR. EVANS: I think that is in keeping with  
3 having a range. I think that ultimately, after we  
4 receive public comment, we are going to have to face  
5 some hard decisions about whether we come out with  
6 specific recommendations or not. That will weigh into  
7 it. Did we have sufficient expertise; did we take  
8 into account sufficient breadth to make these  
9 recommendations.

10 DR. TEUTSCH: We need to move along.

11 DR. WILLIAMS: No, I understand. I must  
12 admit, though, that I feel much more like Charles  
13 feels. This really is a non sequitur because none of  
14 the case studies specifically address association  
15 patents, even though, as Rochelle says, there are  
16 aspects of associations that are within the  
17 intellectual property issues in all the case studies.

18 I think in some ways it just does stick out  
19 this way in the sense that if you read all of the  
20 preliminary material you wouldn't necessarily come to  
21 say this is where we should be.

22 DR. EVANS: Right. We can talk about this

1 all day. I think your point is well taken. I do  
2 think that it does relate to patentable subject  
3 matter.

4 DR. WILLIAMS: I think what we need to do,  
5 though, is we need to clarify, again, perhaps within  
6 the preamble or perhaps within the text of the report  
7 that goes out, why we are picking this out and how  
8 that relates to where the associations reside within  
9 the case studies.

10 DR. EVANS: In my mind, what legitimacy it  
11 has with residence there has to do with what is  
12 patentable subject matter, an issue which, in general,  
13 is of great interest to this Committee.

14 DR. WILLIAMS: I agree. It is just that,  
15 for those of us that weren't intimately involved and  
16 not living with it, you look at that and you say,  
17 where did that come from?

18 DR. TELFAIR: A quick comment. I would say,  
19 in respect to the preamble that is being recommended,  
20 we would like very specific comments with specific  
21 recommendations from the public so that whatever we  
22 get back is very targeted and very clear, independent

1 of what side it goes on.

2 I would just add that part of the  
3 recommendation up to this point is that an appropriate  
4 committee be formed to review these. I'm just trying  
5 to address the issue related to the breadth of the  
6 persons who are going to look at this.

7 DR. EVANS: In the vein of not trying to be  
8 provocative, "Modify the Patent Act as necessary to  
9 expressly withhold the right of injunctive relief from  
10 patent holders or their licensees who are impeding  
11 patient access to a genetic diagnostic test." I think  
12 this is probably best seen in the context of the  
13 subsequent ones. Then we can go back.

14 "The Secretary of HHS should work within the  
15 administration to encourage support for legislative  
16 change. The following are potential options:

17 "Create an exemption from patent  
18 infringement liability for medical practitioners who  
19 order, use, or perform diagnostic genetic tests in  
20 clinical care. Related healthcare entities should  
21 also be covered by this exemption." This is  
22 essentially expanding the Ganske-Frist Act to include

1     diagnostics.

2                     The issue of research is one that comes up  
3     time and time again as one looks at the patent and  
4     licensing landscape. That is what C2 is addressing.

5     "Create an exemption from patent infringement  
6     liability for those who order, use, or perform  
7     diagnostic genetic tests in the pursuit of research."

8     The only reason those are underlined is to make clear  
9     their differences.

10                    "Related healthcare and research entities  
11     should also be covered by this exemption."

12                    Again, we are still talking about 7B and  
13     these. I think it is very important to craft a  
14     preamble that states that this is a range. We are not  
15     wedded to this. We want people's specific comments.

16                    In the spirit of trying to adopt what Mara  
17     and Marc have said, do you feel that there are other  
18     recommendations? Are these unbalanced in your minds?

19     Could they be balanced with other recommendations  
20     that are on a different end of a spectrum? What are  
21     people's thoughts about these?

22                    DR. WILLIAMS: Since it was addressed to me,

1 I will just say that these are much less problematic  
2 from my perspective. That just may reflect ignorance  
3 on my part.

4           But it seems that this is not something  
5 where we are looking at necessarily opening up the  
6 competitive landscape. That would damage industry  
7 relating to things in terms of a clinical provision of  
8 a test as opposed to a test that is being used for  
9 research purposes that might gain knowledge.

10           I'm not even sure about C1. It makes me  
11 worry as a practitioner about what I'm actually liable  
12 for as I write that test order form. Am I actually  
13 incurring some liability? I don't know. But these  
14 are less problematic for me than the previous two.

15           DR. ASPINALL: I hate to go back to  
16 disagreeing with Marc, but first of all, my  
17 understanding is that C2 is the current state of  
18 events in terms of the use of patents.

19           DR. EVANS: No. That is a total  
20 presumption. It is not explicit by any means.

21           DR. ASPINALL: But if it is in the pursuit  
22 of research, at least until the patent is granted

1 there is no ability to enforce patents.

2 DR. EVANS: Once a patent is granted, many  
3 of those patent holders could, if they chose,  
4 eliminate research.

5 DR. ASPINALL: If it is granted. Not all  
6 the patents are granted. So for me, this goes into  
7 the same category.

8 I will go back. I don't mind being  
9 provocative, but I think the only way we can be  
10 provocative in throwing a straw man out there is if  
11 there is a unanimous opinion in the group that that is  
12 true to what we would like to throw out there. In and  
13 of itself, I don't mind being provocative, but I think  
14 this is an inappropriate time to do it.

15 DR. EVANS: I think these entirely flow from  
16 our case studies.

17 DR. ASPINALL: For me, that is probably the  
18 fundamental gap that I see. C1, and actually C2,  
19 really just undercuts the whole. Regardless of how  
20 you phrase it with association studies, it essentially  
21 undercuts the patent system entirely.

22 DR. EVANS: No more than Ganske-Frist did.

1 DR. ASPINALL: Except for the separation of  
2 diagnostics in a way that says that you cannot --

3 DR. EVANS: In a way, Ganske-Frist could be  
4 seen as being incomplete in the sense that there is an  
5 exemption for this type of thing.

6 DR. ASPINALL: Yes. But we talked about  
7 chilling effect and the ability to not have any reason  
8 to be innovative if we create this exemption.  
9 Clinical care is basically all patient use.

10 DR. EVANS: Rochelle.

11 DR. DREYFUSS: I think there is some  
12 confusion in the room. Every single one of these  
13 options so far has its place in the law as we now know  
14 of it. None of these things are entirely impossible  
15 under current law. For example, the association test.  
16 Justice Breyer said, I don't think that ought to be  
17 patentable, and several of the judges in the Bilski  
18 case said, I don't think under current law that is  
19 patentable.

20 It is not like we are throwing out something  
21 that doesn't already exist. These two certainly  
22 exist. People used to think that there was a research

1 exemption. It is only very recently that the Federal  
2 Circuit has hinted that maybe there isn't.

3           The Supreme Court has already indicated they  
4 think the Federal Circuit should rethink that, and the  
5 Federal Circuit has itself already said, not in a case  
6 but in speeches by the judges, that maybe that case  
7 where they said there was no research exemption was  
8 special and dealt only with specific things. That is  
9 not a general, run-of-the-mill case. As has been  
10 pointed out, the clinical care one is just an  
11 extension of Ganske-Frist.

12           So it is not like any of these things are  
13 totally new to what people have been thinking. This  
14 is all a natural progression from where various  
15 justices or judges have staked out their position on  
16 what the law is. The question is whether or not we  
17 ought to either create a statute about this.

18           It is also a little bit of a push to the  
19 judges to say, look at the studies that we did when  
20 you are thinking about what you want to do as a matter  
21 of common law. We have some data for you, which I  
22 think is very helpful to judges.

1 DR. ASPINALL: I would agree with that. I  
2 don't see these completely coming out of the blue. We  
3 can argue as to whether they came directly or  
4 indirectly from the case studies. For me, that is not  
5 the point. I would agree with Rochelle that these  
6 come out of what is there. These are extensions.

7 DR. EVANS: Right. But that is not what we  
8 are discussing here.

9 DR. ASPINALL: A few minutes ago I was going  
10 to make the decision as to whether it would even make  
11 sense to go through these in such detail. You could  
12 take the philosophy that if we add what Kevin had  
13 suggested that these are straw men and meant to be  
14 straw men, we are putting them out for comment and  
15 SACGHS is not ready to say this is our opinion now.  
16 I'm okay with that.

17 DR. EVANS: We are doing two things. There  
18 are possible recommendations in here that, for  
19 example, don't make sense. They just don't make sense  
20 from a legislative or rules standpoint. The other is,  
21 to think of are there things we have missed. We are a  
22 small task force. In this process of these conference

1 calls we tried to grapple with these things, but we  
2 certainly recognize there may be ones we have missed.

3           So, in the vein again of being provocative,  
4 "The Secretary of HHS should work within the  
5 administration to encourage support for legislative  
6 change. The following are potential options." Again,  
7 we will recraft the preamble to try to make this a  
8 little more clear.

9           Let me just read these as a unit. "Require  
10 the patents on DNA sequences be limited to the  
11 utilities specified in the patent, or prohibit patents  
12 on DNA sequences for diagnostic purposes, or prohibit  
13 patents on DNA sequences."

14           Now, we had a lot of discussion on the  
15 conference calls about whether, for example, D3 should  
16 be in here. Our final analysis was not only is it  
17 something people have thought of, it has been  
18 introduced as legislation in the House. This is not  
19 something we can duck. We have to at least discuss  
20 this.

21           I think that there are, again, differences  
22 about whether that is too blunt of an instrument or

1 not, but I think that it would be a glaring omission  
2 were we not to have that in there because it is  
3 already on the table.

4 DR. FITZGERALD: A quick question. When you  
5 say DNA sequences, is that supposed to be limited to  
6 human or opened up?

7 DR. EVANS: Great question. We talked a lot  
8 about that.

9 DR. FITZGERALD: That is why you pay me the  
10 money that you do.

11 DR. EVANS: That's right. That is why you  
12 get the big bucks for driving the big rigs.

13 [Laughter.]

14 DR. EVANS: Somewhere in the draft -- and we  
15 discussed this and I must admit now it eludes me where  
16 -- we were going to address that. As I was looking  
17 through the draft, I realized that perhaps we did not  
18 get that in there.

19 The task force's general conclusion was that  
20 we are talking about DNA and RNA nucleic acid  
21 sequences that are related to human health. I don't  
22 know what to think about this. This has been kind of

1 a messy issue lurking in the corner and we have about  
2 32 minutes to resolve it.

3 DR. TEUTSCH: Actually, 18.

4 DR. EVANS: Eighteen minutes. I don't know.  
5 What do you think? Should it include SARS? Should  
6 it include human pathogens?

7 DR. DREYFUSS: It seems to me that what  
8 makes this different from other areas of patenting is  
9 the inability to invent around. It really, I think,  
10 has to do with natural DNA and not with man-made DNA.

11 DR. EVANS: I think what Kevin is getting to  
12 is, does it include non-human DNA like pathogens.

13 DR. DREYFUSS: That has the same problem.  
14 You can't invent around it. If you are going to deal  
15 with the pathogen you have to use its DNA. So I would  
16 include it. That would be the line I would use.

17 DR. EVANS: Other comments? John.

18 MR. LeGUYADER: First off, personally, I  
19 don't like this recommendation for the same reasons  
20 that I didn't like the previous one. It will have a  
21 chilling effect on the industry.

22 But if you are going to do this, I think you

1 should probably include pathogens or other DNAs that  
2 are associated with disease. But I think you would  
3 want to be careful also to craft this so you exclude  
4 industrially useful DNA that are used, for example, in  
5 micro-organisms to make amino acids or to make a  
6 particular protein because it is useful in detergents  
7 and so forth.

8 DR. EVANS: Steve's suggestion is to define  
9 it as health-related nucleic acids.

10 DR. FITZGERALD: A clarification on that,  
11 because I know one of the things that is going to come  
12 up again. Does that include nutrition and nutritious  
13 capacity or content of plants?

14 DR. EVANS: Maybe "medically relevant."

15 DR. FITZGERALD: That is why I say it. Try  
16 to be as precise as you can.

17 MR. LeGUYADER: That is a good point because  
18 plants are being used to genetically grow and make  
19 antibodies. You can use that straight as a vaccine.

20 DR. DREYFUSS: I guess you can create your  
21 own pathogens, but we are not trying to find ways to  
22 treat those. It is the things that are naturally

1 occurring that we care about as a clinical matter,  
2 things that are used the laboratory to make insulin or  
3 to do lots of other clinical activities.

4 DR. FITZGERALD: I guess my only concern  
5 with that is this whole area now of synthetic biology.

6 A group of undergraduates from Slovenia just create a  
7 vaccine to *Helicobacter pylori*. That is not a  
8 naturally occurring sequence, but it would be a  
9 vaccine.

10 DR. DREYFUSS: Right. I would think that  
11 that should be patentable. Making the dividing line  
12 medical I think is a bad idea. You do want to be able  
13 to create medically relevant products through DNA  
14 genetic manipulation, and you certainly want to have  
15 patents on those things.

16 DR. EVANS: That just reminded me of  
17 something on the conference call that did address  
18 this. By having diagnostic purposes in there, in many  
19 ways that solves much of this problem. Diagnostic  
20 purposes then would include SARS and the genome of  
21 *Helicobacter pylori*.

22 DR. ASPINALL: But I think if you are going

1 to put this in, you have to put in the third one  
2 because the idea of what is diagnostic and what is  
3 therapeutic is --

4 DR. EVANS: The third one would be which?

5 DR. ASPINALL: "Prohibit patents on DNA  
6 sequencing," as opposed to just diagnostic.

7 DR. EVANS: I think that is the most  
8 extreme.

9 DR. ASPINALL: I much prefer D3 to D2. You  
10 separate one part of the industry.

11 DR. EVANS: That is your opinion.

12 DR. ASPINALL: Yes, personally. But the  
13 idea of looking at it broadly, I think having a line  
14 between a therapeutic vaccine and what is a diagnostic  
15 and what is a therapeutic [is an issue]. Somebody  
16 made the point before that we are going to be thinking  
17 forward to the future. Those lines are going to  
18 continue to blur as to how we use a drug as a tracer.

19 DR. EVANS: Again, those are discussions for  
20 later.

21 DR. AMOS: I think that once you make these  
22 rules for DNA and RNA, there is not a big leap to go

1 to proteins and metabolites and all these other  
2 things, too.

3 DR. EVANS: But we are not --

4 DR. AMOS: I'm just bringing it up.

5 DR. ASPINALL: I assumed this would include  
6 that.

7 DR. EVANS: Yes. It says DNA.

8 DR. ASPINALL: But if we use Rochelle's  
9 definition, do we assume it is the broader definition  
10 of naturally occurring substances?

11 DR. EVANS: It is DNA sequences.

12 DR. ASPINALL: So, not protein.

13 DR. EVANS: Not protein.

14 DR. ASPINALL: RNA, protein enzymes?

15 DR. EVANS: I think one could certainly put  
16 in nucleic acid. But I certainly think it is beyond  
17 the purview of this Committee to now start talking  
18 about proteins.

19 DR. ASPINALL: But, how would it  
20 philosophically be different if the next wave of  
21 technology is proteins?

22 DR. EVANS: It is totally different. Look

1 at our initial definitions at the start. We are  
2 talking about diagnostic tests that are predicated  
3 upon the analysis of nucleic acids.

4 DR. AMOS: For this report.

5 DR. EVANS: I actually do think you bring up  
6 a point. This should be "nucleic acid sequences" and  
7 not DNA because RNA is a major player in this.

8 DR. AMOS: Jim, I think it might be good to  
9 get some sort of legal opinion on how difficult it  
10 would be to take the legislation and language that is  
11 written on a naturally occurring DNA substance and  
12 translate that into other things.

13 DR. EVANS: But what is the point?

14 DR. AMOS: Well, everybody might get upset  
15 that protein patents are getting in the way of  
16 diagnostics.

17 DR. EVANS: They might, but that is not in  
18 our scope. It is not in the purview of this  
19 Committee.

20 DR. AMOS: I'm just saying that somebody  
21 needs to take a look at how big of a leap it would be  
22 to go from one to the other.

1 DR. EVANS: I think that could be something  
2 that we could talk about whether the Committee should  
3 discuss. But I don't think it is in the purview of  
4 the scope of this task force.

5 DR. AMOS: Except in the Oversight of  
6 Genetic Testing report. We defined a genetic test in  
7 that document --

8 DR. EVANS: That is different. But for very  
9 good reasons, I think.

10 Discussion questions. We have been  
11 hammering all this out. Here is the big question. Do  
12 you think there should be anything that should be  
13 added that is not here?

14 DR. ASPINALL: We talked about the preamble  
15 and showing a broader range of options.

16 DR. EVANS: Absolutely. Yes. That assumes  
17 that we are going to include the broader range,  
18 including status quo. I don't think we came to a  
19 definitive decision on whether there should be an  
20 option that we should encourage exclusive licenses.  
21 That seems nuts to me. Is there strong feeling we  
22 should encourage that?

1 [No response.]

2 DR. EVANS: I think status quo would be  
3 appropriate.

4 So, with the changes we have discussed,  
5 should we release this for public comment, with the  
6 understanding that it is a draft? We will make that  
7 clear. We will get the public comment. It is going  
8 to be quite a conversation.

9 DR. TEUTSCH: Just to be clear, though, we  
10 will take the comments we got today, make the  
11 revisions, and then, as you say, the task force  
12 actually will look at it once more.

13 DR. EVANS: Yes.

14 DR. TEUTSCH: Not the whole Committee but  
15 the task force will look at it before it goes out.

16 DR. EVANS: In December, if approved, we  
17 will send it out. February through April will be the  
18 comment period. April and May will be analysis.  
19 Clear your calendars for those delightful calls. June  
20 11th and 12th we all meet again. At that point we  
21 will discuss preliminary findings, but it is during  
22 the summer of 2009 that we will be revising the draft

1 report. It will be at the October 2009 meeting that  
2 we hope to have final recommendations. That will also  
3 give some time for some of these decisions.

4 DR. TEUTSCH: I think it is fair to say that  
5 if we get crystalline recommendations that we can  
6 agree to in June, that would be great. But we didn't  
7 want to tie our hands too much, so we wanted to leave  
8 it open until October.

9 DR. EVANS: Yes, Debra.

10 DR. LEONARD: With the public comment  
11 invitation, how is that going to be worded? You could  
12 say, just comment on what we have written, or is it  
13 open to bring other ideas?

14 DR. EVANS: Yes.

15 DR. LEONARD: Can people say what their own  
16 experiences are?

17 DR. EVANS: Absolutely.

18 DR. LEONARD: I think that request for  
19 public comment is really critical.

20 DR. EVANS: Right. Yvette is pulling that  
21 out. It is not just "Confine your comments to these  
22 particular points."

1 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: I think we should  
2 encourage people to provide proposals. Be very  
3 specific.

4 DR. TEUTSCH: Page V in the report in your  
5 briefing book in the beginning is the note that goes  
6 along with it to the public.

7 DR. EVANS: Right. Tab 3, page V.

8 MR. LeGUYADER: I can say, having been  
9 through the rulemaking process from the Patent Office  
10 point of view, I can guarantee you they will comment  
11 and they will not be afraid to let you know what they  
12 think.

13 DR. FITZGERALD: Actually, on that note,  
14 just building onto past experience -- you can ask  
15 Andrea about this, too -- I think you are going to get  
16 a huge amount of public comments.

17 DR. EVANS: I completely agree. I'm sure we  
18 will.

19 DR. FITZGERALD: Going through that is going  
20 to take you [time].

21 DR. EVANS: Thank you. It will be very  
22 interesting.

1 DR. ASPINALL: Can I just ask a question?  
2 In the vein of the large questions that we are talking  
3 about, are there any other organizations that we want  
4 to ask this group that need to be notified?

5 DR. EVANS: I think that you have basically  
6 a long list of whom to target with regard to  
7 soliciting comments.

8 DR. ASPINALL: Maybe just to suggest that  
9 this Committee, given that this is a more legal view  
10 and a broader healthcare view than some of our other  
11 perspectives, could give recommendations on other  
12 people to ensure are on the list.

13 DR. EVANS: Absolutely. We want this widely  
14 disseminated for comment. Any ideas that anyone has,  
15 public or at the table, please let us know so we can  
16 target them.

17 DR. ASPINALL: That would be great. After  
18 the Committee reviews it, when would this go out and  
19 start the 60-day time frame?

20 DR. EVANS: If you want to go back to those  
21 slides. Again, February through April will be the  
22 comment period; April and May will be analysis. At

1 the next meeting, we will discuss preliminary  
2 findings, except Yvette is telling me we won't be done  
3 by that point.

4 DR. SEGER: We will be mid course.

5 DR. EVANS: With emphasis on the word  
6 "preliminary." Then, a revision of the draft report  
7 will be taking place in the summer, and then we hope  
8 to have final approval in October.

9 DR. ASPINALL: Well done. Amidst the  
10 controversy, well done.

11 DR. EVANS: Thank you.

12 DR. TEUTSCH: Jim and colleagues, a yeoman's  
13 job to get us through this. Tremendous.

14 [Applause.]

15 DR. TEUTSCH: Many thanks to all of you. I  
16 thought that was a very rich discussion and an  
17 appropriate one.

18 We will take a break. Since I think most of  
19 the folks are here for the next session, why don't we  
20 begin at 25 past. Then we will hear comments from  
21 NIST and other agencies about standards. Thank you  
22 all very much.

1 [Break.]

2 DR. TEUTSCH: We are going to begin the next  
3 session, but before we do, a couple of housekeeping  
4 notes. For those of you who are joining us for dinner  
5 tonight, you can meet us there at 6:30. Or if you  
6 would like to walk over from the hotel, we will meet  
7 in the lobby at 6:15.

8 I would also like to bring to your attention  
9 that there is a draft letter to the incoming  
10 Secretary, Secretary Daschle, that talks about the  
11 work we have done and some of the priorities that we  
12 think he should have early on in his tenure. I think  
13 it has not been officially announced that he is the  
14 incoming Secretary, but the newspapers seem to say he  
15 is. I don't even know that there has been an official  
16 announcement from the Obama camp, but that is the  
17 presumption. Then, of course, it needs to be  
18 approved.

19 But anyway, if you have comments on the  
20 letter, we will be discussing that tomorrow.

21 **SESSION ON STANDARDS DEVELOPMENT INITIATIVES TO**  
22 **ENHANCE**

1           **OVERSIGHT AND ADVANCE INNOVATION OF GENETIC**  
2 **TECHNOLOGIES**

3                           **Overview of Session**

4                           **Steven Teutsch, M.D., M.P.H.**

5                   DR. TEUTSCH: Now we are going to turn our  
6 attention to Standards Development and Initiatives to  
7 Enhance Oversight and Advance Innovation of Genetic  
8 Technologies. I think, as many of you know who worked  
9 so diligently on the Oversight report, control and  
10 reference materials play a critical role in assuring  
11 the quality and analytic validity of genetic test  
12 results. These are the materials we use in  
13 performance assessment programs, including proficiency  
14 testing.

15                   In the SACGHS Oversight report, we  
16 identified a number of significant gaps in the  
17 oversight of clinical lab quality and called for  
18 stronger CLIA requirements related to proficiency  
19 testing and more support for the development of  
20 reference materials and methods for assay, analyte,  
21 and platform validation, quality control, performance  
22 assessment, and standardization.

1           The National Institute of Standards and  
2 Technology, or NIST, and the Centers for Disease  
3 Control and Prevention, CDC, are the federal agencies  
4 most involved in addressing these quality control and  
5 reference material needs. Currently, reference  
6 materials are available for only six of the more than  
7 1,300 clinically available genetic tests. That is  
8 pretty amazing, if you ask me.

9           There are many challenges to the development  
10 of these materials, including cost and time involved  
11 in producing them.

12           Given the importance of this area to the  
13 oversight system, we thought it would be useful to  
14 spend some time delving more deeply into how standards  
15 in lab medicine are produced and to explore the  
16 challenges and barriers that are impeding innovations  
17 in the field and in the translation of biomarker  
18 analysis into clinical practice.

19           We also want to begin to learn about some of  
20 the opportunities and initiatives that are under way.

21       We want to explore the impediments to greater private  
22 sector involvement and the steps that can be taken to

1 incentivize commercial efforts.

2           In particular, I would like to thank someone  
3 who we hear from regularly, Mike Amos -- who is the ex  
4 officio member from NIST and who has been joining us  
5 since I have been on this Committee anyway -- for  
6 suggesting the idea of this session to us and, in  
7 particular, for helping organize that.

8           We will start with a presentation from Dr.  
9 Willie May, who is the director of NIST Chemical  
10 Science and Technology Laboratory. He will provide an  
11 overview of NIST's efforts.

12           Three NIST scientists, Dr. John Butler, Dr.  
13 David Bunk, and Dr. Karen Phinney, will present  
14 examples of the standards development for genomic,  
15 proteomic, and metabolomic tests.

16           To round out the presentation, Steve Gutman  
17 will discuss some of the measurement and standard  
18 challenges that are facing FDA, and Dr. Jeff Cossman,  
19 chief scientific officer at the Critical Path  
20 Institute, will review some of the challenges being  
21 faced by clinical labs.

22           Dr. Amos will discuss future trends in the

1 diagnosis of disease or risk projection, including  
2 next-generation diagnostic tests, based on the  
3 multiplex determination of complex biomarker  
4 signatures rather than single markers of biological  
5 activity.

6           While the focus of today's presentations  
7 will be on NIST's efforts, we also want to remain  
8 cognizant of CDC's work in this area through its  
9 Newborn Screening Program and the Genetic Test  
10 Reference Materials Coordination Program, or GeTRM.

11           We showcased these efforts in our Oversight  
12 report. Dr. Lisa Kalman from CDC is joining us today  
13 to represent GeTRM. We will have the opportunity to  
14 hear from Lisa during the discussion session about the  
15 program's current initiatives to develop reference  
16 materials for five pharmacogenomic markers and for  
17 array-based comparative genomic hybridization, which  
18 is a high-resolution analysis of chromosomal  
19 imbalances.

20           Finally, we are also pleased that Penny  
21 Keller is here for CMS's CLIA program.

22           You can find background information on this

1 session at Tab 4 and biosketches in Tab 2. We don't  
2 have all of the presentations in your notebooks, but I  
3 understand that the remainder will be available to us  
4 tomorrow.

5 Thank you very much, Dr. May, for being  
6 here. We look forward to what you have to tell us.  
7 Thanks so much.

8 **Initiatives of the National Institute of**  
9 **Standards and Technology (NIST)**  
10 **in Clinical Diagnostics Standards Development**

11 **Willie May, Ph.D.**

12 [PowerPoint presentation.]

13 DR. MAY: We don't have much time, so let's  
14 just get at it. What I would like to talk to you  
15 about this afternoon is our organization, our basic  
16 mission, and some of the new initiatives that we have.  
17 Specifically, I will talk about why NIST would be  
18 involved in bioscience and health since we are not  
19 NIH, we are not CDC, and we are not FDA. I will talk  
20 about some of our current activities in the area of  
21 bioscience and health.

22 I will just say now that standards for

1 genetic testing are a very, very small part of the  
2 portfolio but one that perhaps you can convince us to  
3 increase.

4           Finally, I will talk about how we are  
5 connected to the international measurement standards  
6 community.

7           Our organization was born, if you will, a  
8 little bit more than 100 years ago and charged with  
9 providing the measurement standards infrastructure to  
10 support manufacturing, commerce, and the makers of  
11 scientific apparatus, to work with other government  
12 agencies, and to support the academic sector. It is  
13 amazing; if you were to look now at the things we do,  
14 it is almost like this chart was given to us last  
15 year. This still remains the focus of a lot of our  
16 activities.

17           Now, some of the early drivers for some of  
18 our activities. We were in the midst of the  
19 Industrial Revolution, and people noticed that  
20 construction materials were not of uniform quality.  
21 Also, there were eight different values for a gallon  
22 if you drove from the East Coast to Chicago.

1 Standards were needed for the electrical industry.

2 Scales were not standardized and they were often  
3 biased in favor of the seller, as you might imagine.

4           There were needs from chemical composition,  
5 dimensional, and metrology standards to support the  
6 railway system. In other words, lots of trains were  
7 jumping lots of tracks.

8           The thing that was most alarming, we being  
9 who we are, is we didn't like having to send our  
10 instruments abroad to be calibrated. So those things  
11 led to the inception of the National Bureau of  
12 Standards in 1901.

13           Since we are not the lead agency for health,  
14 the environment, or food safety and nutrition, and we  
15 have this arcane mission of being responsible for the  
16 nation's measurement standards, to remain a viable and  
17 productive organization we have had to change the  
18 focus of our activities continually to focus on major  
19 problems of society.

20           Today our organization has four major  
21 components. The NIST laboratories are the remnant of  
22 the National Bureau of Standards. We manage the

1 Malcolm Baldrige Quality Award. We have something  
2 called the Hollins Manufacturing Extension Partnership  
3 and the Technology Innovation Program, which used to  
4 be the Advanced Technology Program. Perhaps after the  
5 session, if anyone has any questions on any of these  
6 extramural programs, I can share those with you.

7           Our mission is to promote U.S. innovation  
8 and industrial competitiveness by advancing  
9 measurement science, standards, and technology in ways  
10 that enhance economic security and improve quality of  
11 life.

12           If you really were to look closely, this  
13 part and that part change. The words change in almost  
14 every administration. But these three bullets have  
15 not changed to any substantive effect over the last  
16 100 years.

17           The NIST laboratories are responsible for  
18 maintaining the expertise and facilities for providing  
19 this measurement standards infrastructure to support  
20 the U.S. That work is carried out by what we call the  
21 laboratories, the Chemical Science and Technology  
22 Laboratory being one of 10 of these.

1           As you can see, we are organized pretty much  
2 like a university campus. We do what some people  
3 might call academic-type research, but that is to  
4 support the dissemination of the measurement services  
5 products that we disseminate.

6           Primarily, lots of work goes into the  
7 realization of the seven basic units of measurement,  
8 things like improving our realization of time. Right  
9 now the NIST Atomic Clock is accurate to one second in  
10 30 million years. We are working on clocks now that  
11 we think will improve this by three orders of  
12 magnitude.

13           You might think, why would you do this? My  
14 watch works fine. Well, things like GPS and a lot of  
15 things you don't think about, like interstellar travel  
16 and so forth, are very dependent very precise  
17 realization of time and frequency measurements.

18           The last physical artifact that exists is  
19 the kilogram that sits in the basement of the BIPM in  
20 Paris. If you have been looking at a lot of the  
21 editorials in the popular press lately, you will find  
22 that the kilogram is said to be losing weight at about

1 one part in  $10^8$  per year. We don't really know that  
2 that is happening. All we know is that the mass of  
3 the kilogram relative to the mass of about 30 other  
4 prototypes based on that seems to be changing over  
5 time. So the relationship between them is changing,  
6 and that is a practical reason for changing.

7           There are also just pure scientific reasons  
8 that are leading the community to try to establish  
9 what we call the electronic kilogram. There is an  
10 approach to something called the Watt Balance. The  
11 new redefinition will be based on Plank's constant,  
12 most likely. But to lock that time, we will take this  
13 kilogram and then have a device called the Watt  
14 Balance. Different countries have different  
15 realizations of this to balance electrical force and  
16 mechanical force to try to transfer this.

17           Again, that realization has to agree to  
18 about one part in  $10^8$ . Right now, we are about one to  
19 two orders or magnitude off from that. So that has to  
20 be completed by 2011 if the kilogram is to be  
21 redefined.

22           But we also serve a much broader community

1 with constantly changing measurement standards needs.

2 NIST has traditionally focused its research  
3 and measurement service activities on the physical  
4 science and engineering disciplines. But bioscience  
5 and health has now been identified as an area for  
6 significant emphasis and growth at NIST.

7 Why NIST and the biosciences. First of all,  
8 as the NIST leadership has looked at our mission, we  
9 feel that it is congruent with our mission and indeed  
10 our mandate to support U.S. industry and other  
11 stakeholders with overcoming measurement standards-  
12 related challenges in the biosciences, to provide  
13 confidence in results from measurements of complex  
14 biosystems, and to enable and facilitate realization  
15 of the maximum economic and broad societal benefits of  
16 innovation.

17 Now, Mike Amos and I have this discussion  
18 all the time where he says, NIST has to be involved  
19 for innovation, and I say, no, we don't, Mike. Not at  
20 all. Innovation is going to take place whether NIST  
21 exists or not. However, we maintain that by having  
22 this infrastructure to support comparable measurements

1 over space and time we will provide the infrastructure  
2 to allow society to gain maximum benefit out of these  
3 new innovations.

4           The other reason that we are doing it is, an  
5 emphasis of the administration is a better  
6 understanding of complex biological systems. I think  
7 this will continue into the next administration. The  
8 executive branch, let's say.

9           Other agencies come to us. This is just one  
10 quote. It's from Anna Barker, the deputy director of  
11 NCI.

12           There is an oversight committee that NIST  
13 has called the Committee on Advanced Technology. We  
14 have heard from two of its members that NIST should  
15 also expand its activities to support the biosciences.

16           Actually, we have been involved in  
17 bioscience-related activities for quite some time.  
18 Back in the 1920s a collaboration began between NIST  
19 and the American Dental Association that led to a lot  
20 of the innovations in dentistry that we take for  
21 granted now. Things like polymer composite dental  
22 fillings and the air turbine drill, found in almost

1 all dental offices, were developed by a number of  
2 employees of the American Dental Association who work  
3 at NIST full-time. There are about 30 people. Many  
4 people don't know they aren't NIST employees because  
5 they work there full-time.

6 In the 1920s we also started a program in  
7 radiation physics which focused initially on X-ray  
8 calibration and now includes standards for mammography  
9 and radionuclides for radiopharmaceuticals.

10 We started our program in oncodiagnostics in  
11 the 1970s with some support from NIH to provide  
12 primary references for electrolytes and metabolites.  
13 So, cholesterol, uric acid, glucose, electrolytes,  
14 calcium, sodium, and so forth. Then, later, in the  
15 1980s, we began having serum-based standards for  
16 those. Around the turn of the century we began to  
17 focus on biomarkers for proteins, peptides, and DNA.

18 This is an example of some of those small  
19 molecules, primarily electrolytes and metabolites,  
20 that we have had standards for for a number of years.

21 By standards I mean reference measurement procedures  
22 and, obviously, certified reference materials or

1 standard reference materials.

2           Then, about 10 to 15 years ago, we began to  
3 focus on more challenging biomarkers. These are some  
4 of the things that we have worked on. As you see, two  
5 of these might be considered genetic standards, but my  
6 colleagues will talk to you about some of the more in-  
7 depth details of expansion in this area.

8           NIST spends a little more than 10 percent of  
9 its appropriated funds on bioscience-related  
10 activities by our own self-declaration. Now, of this,  
11 around \$38 million is focused on biosciences. Only  
12 about \$10 million was appropriated for that. The  
13 other money has come as the result of decisions by  
14 individual laboratory directors to reprogram funds  
15 into this.

16           Right now, we are in the process of  
17 developing a strategic plan not only to support growth  
18 of our program in the biosciences but also to do a  
19 better job of directing some of the funds that we  
20 already have. Right now, to be quite honest, each  
21 laboratory has its own program. To get maximum impact  
22 out of the resources we have, we are going to try to

1 coordinate this in a much better manner.

2 I will just go through some of the  
3 activities and projects that we have that support  
4 health care.

5 So, what is the typical role of an  
6 organization like NIST. We see that all the national  
7 metrology institutes around the world have  
8 scientifically sound, metrologically-based -- not  
9 weather -- measurement science-based competencies and  
10 measurement capabilities that are vetted  
11 internationally. That underpins the delivery of a  
12 number of measurement services, one of which is  
13 certified reference materials. Standard reference  
14 materials is the NIST brand name for the certified  
15 reference materials that we produce.

16 Now, the Treaty of the Meter was established  
17 in 1875. It developed this collegial group of  
18 national standards institutes around the world, those  
19 that existed. Of course, that was before NIST  
20 existed. NIST or NBS, joined that in the early 1900s.

21 In 1999, though, there was a mutual  
22 recognition arrangement that was established that

1 required three things. All national standards  
2 institutes like NIST were required to declare and  
3 document the measurement capabilities that we use to  
4 deliver the services that they provided.

5           By signing this, you also said that you  
6 would agree to participate in very formal  
7 international comparisons so that you had some  
8 evidence to support the claims you were making and,  
9 further, you would maintain a quality system to  
10 underpin your dissemination of the services that you  
11 deliver using these techniques that you have claimed  
12 have been internationally vetted and compared. This  
13 mutual recognition arrangement now has been signed by  
14 over 200 national measurement institutes or designated  
15 institutes around the world.

16           This is an example of a comparison for  
17 creatinine and serum. This is the European Union  
18 laboratory, Korea, the U.K., NIST of course, and the  
19 German laboratories. This basically shows how well  
20 our capabilities for providing reference measurements  
21 for creatinine serum agree with each other

22           This is a more recent one that was completed

1 this year. This is cortisol in serum and progesterone  
2 in serum. Japan, the U.K., China, the U.S., Germany,  
3 Korea. Then, progesterone, the same laboratories,  
4 except Australia is involved, and Mexico.

5 In this example certainly, if there was a  
6 CRM that was developed by Mexico based on this  
7 analysis, there might be reason to question it, if you  
8 will.

9 The MRA is about documenting measurement  
10 capabilities that national metrology institutes  
11 maintain and looking at how well those measurement  
12 capabilities compare with each other.

13 Also around 1999, there was this European  
14 Union directive that said that the traceability of  
15 values of assigned to calibrators or reference  
16 materials must be assured through available reference  
17 materials of a higher order. The U.S. IVD  
18 manufacturers came to NIST and the metrology community  
19 and said, we need help with this because without that  
20 we won't be able to sell our products in the European  
21 Union.

22 So we convened a meeting at NIST among all

1 the stakeholders. One of the recommendations was the  
2 establishment of a global consortium of IVD  
3 manufacturers, professional societies, national  
4 metrology institutes, and regulatory bodies. This  
5 organization became named the Joint Committee on  
6 Traceability in Laboratory Medicine. Three principals  
7 in this were the International Committee on Weights  
8 and Measures, which represents the national metrology  
9 institute community; the International Federation for  
10 Clinical Chemistry, which represents the professional  
11 community; and the International Laboratory  
12 Accreditation Corporation, which represents the  
13 accreditation community, if you will.

14           The product from this is a database of  
15 higher order reference measurement procedures,  
16 certified reference materials, and laboratories that  
17 provide reference measurement services to the clinical  
18 chemistry community.

19           I will just show one of their work products.

20       A work product other than this database is the  
21 comparison of standards that are in that database to  
22 see how they compare with each other. As it turns

1 out, the standards three years ago for cholesterol  
2 came from only two places. There were a number from  
3 NIST and a Japanese laboratory, and this just shows  
4 how they compared with each other. If one were to  
5 select randomly any of the certified reference  
6 materials in the database, they agree to within less  
7 than 1 percent of each other.

8           This shows also two reference measurement  
9 procedures for cholesterol that are identified in the  
10 database, and there are only two. This is how well  
11 they agree with each other.

12           So the world is changing, and we realize  
13 that we must change at NIST. Mike Amos is going to  
14 talk about this, so I won't say a lot about this  
15 except to say that one of the future thrusts for us is  
16 to look at tools for what we call visualization of  
17 disease signatures and our new initiative for 2010 and  
18 beyond. It will have two areas of focus. One is  
19 quantitative medical imaging and protein measurement  
20 science.

21           At this point we don't have standards for  
22 genetic diseases in there, but after discussing it

1 with you, if the general capabilities that we have  
2 won't support that, then there is an opportunity to  
3 amend our current plans.

4 So, thank you for your attention.

5 [Applause.]

6 DR. TEUTSCH: Are you happy to entertain  
7 questions?

8 DR. MAY: Sure.

9 **Question-and-Answer Session**

10 DR. ASPINALL: First of all, a very  
11 impressive presentation. It was great to give us the  
12 history to get to where you are going now. How do you  
13 implement new standards? In brief, how does that  
14 process work? How do you get the communication and  
15 the time frame to do that?

16 DR. MAY: Right now we are developing a  
17 strategic plan. We are putting together the strategic  
18 plan. We have catalogued a number of workshops,  
19 conferences, and visits to stakeholder communities.  
20 We have captured conversations that we have had when  
21 we had official visits from stakeholder communities to  
22 NIST to try to develop some sort of coherent plan for

1 NIST.

2           What we have done in the past is that  
3 individual divisions within NIST would conduct their  
4 own needs assessment. Lots of the standards that we  
5 have now were developed because of input most often  
6 from the American Association for Clinical Chemistry.

7       So we would have workshops at AACC meetings often and  
8 try to interact with stakeholders and say, what are  
9 your top priorities. If you could give us priorities,  
10 what would the top five be, for example.

11           Basically, to answer your question very  
12 quickly, we get input from lots of sources. We  
13 distill that, try to look at the highest priorities,  
14 and then match that with the capabilities that we  
15 have. If there is something that is a high priority  
16 but we don't have the skill set to address that  
17 problem within the next two or three years, then we  
18 tend not to address that because it wouldn't do us any  
19 good to have an answer 10 years later when probably  
20 the priorities have changed.

21           DR. ASPINALL: Do you use those same  
22 societies to disseminate the information after you

1 have created new standards?

2 DR. MAY: We disseminate information  
3 probably poorly. We have our website. The standards  
4 are in our standard reference materials catalogue.  
5 Right now, NIST has about 1,400 standard reference  
6 materials. About 1,000 of those have values assigned  
7 for chemical or biological analytes.

8 Our old customers know to go through that  
9 SRM catalogue to look for what they need. But what we  
10 have not done as effectively as we should is provide  
11 avenues for new customers and people who don't know  
12 about that. That is one of the reasons we are down  
13 here today.

14 DR. TEUTSCH: Julio and then Andrea.

15 DR. LICINIO: Wonderful presentation. I had  
16 a question on the cortisol and progesterone  
17 measurements that you had, which was, I think, a  
18 fantastic thing to do because it is true that you have  
19 the same sample and you get different measures. It  
20 can be very confusing.

21 One of the things we discussed here before  
22 is that one of the issues in the area is that genetic

1 labs sometimes can get disparate results. Would you  
2 be willing to do the same type of thing with genetic  
3 companies and see what the divergence rate is?

4 DR. MAY: I guess we could do that.  
5 Normally we look to the CAP and other accreditation  
6 bodies to do this. This was a comparison among  
7 national standards laboratories. These are the  
8 laboratories that are supposed to be providing  
9 traceability to the companies within their region.

10 Now, obviously, that is not a perfect thing  
11 because right now more than half of the standard  
12 reference materials that we sell at NIST are sold  
13 internationally, not within the United States. So  
14 people are free to get their reference materials from  
15 wherever they want.

16 But this basically is information to the  
17 national metrology institute as to how they stack up  
18 relative to others. You might ask, how do we know the  
19 true answer here? These are not spiked samples. We  
20 don't use spiked samples. We use naturally occurring  
21 samples. We have a lot of, let's say, intellectual  
22 debates, if you will. We have each of the

1 participants go through their methodology. We shoot  
2 holes in it. Then we try to discern from those  
3 arguments which laboratories will be used to assign  
4 the reference value.

5           It is not just if you happen to luckily get  
6 an answer. We look at the material. For example,  
7 LGC's information wasn't used to define this. As it  
8 turns out, they were right on. But in their  
9 description of their methodology there were some  
10 issues. The same thing here. There were only three  
11 laboratories that we agreed to consensus had a sound  
12 approach.

13           So everybody develops the approach in their  
14 laboratories. This is not using one published method  
15 but methods of the highest metrological order as  
16 defined by that individual institution. Then we try  
17 to get from that to discern what we think the truth  
18 is. Then we compare things against that.

19           DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: Part of my question  
20 has already been answered. But, you bring that  
21 information back to NIST and assign a value. Before  
22 you commercialize that, do you engage your end users

1 again to see if that value has changed? Do you  
2 periodically send surveys out to some of these  
3 laboratories to recheck the values?

4 DR. MAY: It is within our system to do a  
5 stability check on all of our reference materials.  
6 Some of them might take a year or two years. We might  
7 make a measurement now and might make another set of  
8 measurements in our laboratories a year or a year and  
9 a half later to assure ourselves that the matrix is  
10 stable. So it is not until we have addressed all of  
11 the issues.

12 Every certification campaign is different  
13 because it depends on what the material is and how  
14 stable we think it is. Then we do other measurements  
15 to try to assure ourselves that in fact the values are  
16 correct and that the material is stable. We do all of  
17 that before the customer ever gets the material.

18 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: Different analytes  
19 for materials will have different times from  
20 conception to distribution. What is about a mean time  
21 from actual formal distribution of some of these?

22 DR. MAY: I guess, back when I did useful

1 work in the laboratory I could give you that answer.

2 [Laughter.]

3 DR. MAY: It varies so much. For clinical  
4 material, I would probably say two years. For a  
5 genetic standard, how long would that be, John? A  
6 year? I would say a year minimum, probably a maximum  
7 of two to three years from the time that we actually  
8 began working on the project.

9 Now, from the time we get input from the  
10 stakeholder community, that could be three to four  
11 years. Getting the input and deciding that this is  
12 going to be our priority, that might take a year's  
13 time, because we get lots and lots of input from lots  
14 and lots of people. Part of that is deciding  
15 internally if this is going to be one of our  
16 priorities and making sure that we have the resources  
17 to have a successful campaign for development of the  
18 reference material.

19 DR. TEUTSCH: Great. Thank you so much, Dr.  
20 May. We are going to take the next three  
21 presentations in a row and then get questions after  
22 that. Let me turn it over to Dr. Butler, who is going

1 to talk to us about nucleic acid tests.

2 **Nucleic Acid Tests**

3 **John Butler, Ph.D.**

4 [PowerPoint presentation.]

5 DR. BUTLER: Thank you for the opportunity  
6 to address the Committee today. You will notice the  
7 slides that you have will be different from mine. I  
8 will have a few new ones. Some of them will be  
9 hidden, so I won't show all of them, in the interest  
10 of time.

11 What I want to show are some of the things  
12 we have done in the past and what we are trying to do  
13 now with the new Applied Genetics Group that has been  
14 formed within the Biochemical Science Division at NIST  
15 and within the Chemical Science and Technology  
16 Laboratory, and then some of our thoughts for the  
17 future.

18 In terms of the past, most of our experience  
19 has come with doing forensic DNA testing, developing  
20 reference materials and methods, genotyping assays,  
21 and new technologies for improving forensic DNA  
22 testing. This is something that has been well noted

1 in the press in terms of the need for good standards  
2 and quality measurements.

3 In terms of the present, two months ago, on  
4 October 1st, we formed a new Applied Genetics Group,  
5 which is, again, bringing the expertise we have with  
6 developing reference materials for forensic purposes  
7 and now applying that to clinical genetics and also  
8 agricultural biotechnology efforts, like genetically  
9 modified organism detection.

10 We have some done some work with genetic  
11 genealogy and DNA ancestry, trying to help with  
12 improving their nomenclature and how testing is  
13 compatible within things.

14 I will finish with just a few thoughts on  
15 some planned genetic testing and some of the things we  
16 would like to work with. For example, the CDC's GeTRM  
17 program. We want to collaborate with them on things.

18 In terms of our initial efforts and interest  
19 in getting into forensic DNA, Congress passed the DNA  
20 Identification Act in 1994, which gave the FBI  
21 authority to establish a national DNA index system, or  
22 national database for DNA testing.

1           As part of that, there was a DNA advisory  
2 board that was formed. One member of that was from  
3 NIST. From that came quality assurance standards  
4 which now govern how all forensic testing is done in  
5 the United States. These standards have also been  
6 adopted for testing around the world as well.

7           Standard 9.5 within the section on  
8 analytical testing says specifically that the  
9 laboratory shall check its DNA procedures whenever a  
10 change is made against an appropriate and available  
11 NIST standard reference material or a standard  
12 traceable to a NIST standard. This is what has driven  
13 most of our efforts in forensic DNA testing, trying to  
14 provide information that can help with the  
15 underpinnings of quality measurements for forensic  
16 laboratories.

17           This is a new slide here that I just added  
18 showing that at the highest level, the community  
19 level, there are quality assurance standards to make  
20 sure that there is also, of course, inter-laboratory  
21 studies to make sure that everybody can talk to each  
22 other in terms of their data.

1           Within the laboratory, there is the American  
2 Society of Crime Lab Directors Laboratory  
3 Accreditation Board. They have accreditation of  
4 laboratories. Audits are performed, usually annually,  
5 of laboratories to make sure that they are compliant  
6 with the specifications there.

7           Each individual forensic DNA analyst must  
8 perform two proficiency tests per year on any type of  
9 testing that they are doing, plus they are required to  
10 have continuing education to keep up with new  
11 technologies.

12           The next level is the instrument or the  
13 method level, where we have validation of analytical  
14 procedures. This is where the NIST reference  
15 materials come in. You have a traceable reference  
16 material to make sure that your instrument or your  
17 method is working properly.

18           Next is at the protocol level, where you  
19 have standard operating procedures to make sure that  
20 the instruments are used consistently from analyst to  
21 analyst and so on. Each data set has its own standard  
22 materials that are run, positive and negative

1 controls, and so on. Allelic ladders are a mixture of  
2 DNA samples to show all the possible alleles that  
3 would be seen.

4           Individual samples have internal size  
5 standards that are run with them. Then we have  
6 interpretation of results that are confirmed by a  
7 second analyst. Finally, of course, when you go to  
8 court, you have defense attorneys and defense experts  
9 that can examine your data as part of discovery  
10 requests. That provides another check and balance on  
11 how forensic DNA results are done.

12           So, all the way from the community level to  
13 what is presented in court there are checks and  
14 balances with things. The reference materials that  
15 NIST provides are only a small piece of the validation  
16 of the analytical performance of something.

17           Over the years, there have been a number of  
18 different technologies that have been used. For each  
19 of these different technologies we try to have a NIST  
20 reference material available to help with this. The  
21 first is, of course, the restriction fragment link  
22 polymorphism, developed in the late '80s. That was

1 the initial DNA fingerprinting or DNA typing that was  
2 developed.

3           Then there became polymerase chain reaction-  
4 based tests. The next series of reference materials  
5 was SRM 2391, which has been available since the mid  
6 1990s. Then we have had ones for DNA sequencing and  
7 mitochondrial DNA and, most recently, for Y chromosome  
8 testing.

9           The technology in some cases is no longer  
10 used and therefore reference materials get phased out.

11 Then there are growth areas in terms of new markers  
12 and new information that can be added to the same  
13 samples and certified on the same samples.

14           This is just to illustrate what we do on the  
15 genetic tests. On the top right, you see a picture of  
16 the DNA samples themselves. There are 12 different  
17 samples that are provided for this particular test.  
18 Then there is a certificate of analysis that provides  
19 genetic data for each of those samples.

20           In this case, they were characterized for 22  
21 autosomal, short-10 and repeat markers that are used  
22 in forensic testing around the world. We have just

1 recently added 26 new STR markers. It is basically a  
2 value added to the same reference material. So the  
3 DNAs haven't changed. We have just added more  
4 certified information to them.

5           We have also tried to encourage the slowing  
6 down of the consumption of these because they are  
7 expensive to make and certify. We tried to help  
8 laboratories make traceable materials instead of just  
9 using straight off the shelf the reference materials  
10 themselves.

11           These are the basic steps in forensic DNA  
12 testing. You collect the sample, you extract the DNA  
13 and quantify how much DNA is present, perform a  
14 multiplex PCR application. Then you look at the short  
15 tandem repeat markers and interpret those results, and  
16 then put those results in a database where they would  
17 be checked against the frequencies of alleles to  
18 determine how common that particular profile is. That  
19 is what would be presented in court if they match.

20           So the reference materials only focus on the  
21 actual typing results that are produced. There are  
22 many other aspects of the process that could have

1 reference materials, but right now we are just  
2 focusing on the separation of the DNA itself.

3           We are looking at short tandem repeats.  
4 That is what is used in forensics where we have  
5 primers that target a repeat region. The number of  
6 repeats is then converted. The overall size of the  
7 PCR product is measured and then the number of repeats  
8 is what is actually considered in the final analysis  
9 and what is reported. In this case, 11 GATA repeats  
10 is what is recorded in the database for that DNA  
11 profile.

12           That measurement is made against an allelic  
13 ladder, which is a mixture of alleles. You can see in  
14 this case, just showing two samples, one that is a  
15 16/17 and one that is a 15/16. Both those samples are  
16 compared against an allelic ladder that a commercial  
17 manufacturer produces. They check that allelic ladder  
18 against the NIST reference material.

19           There are different sites that are used  
20 throughout the human genome for forensic testing. In  
21 1997 the FBI defined 13 core loci. There is also a  
22 sex-typing marker that is used called amylogenin that

1 is present on X and Y. Then there is some overlap  
2 with Europe. So our reference materials are also used  
3 in Europe, though they use slightly different genetic  
4 markers for their testing there.

5           Now, within the U.S. we have over 6.5  
6 million profiles on the database. A laboratory cannot  
7 put their results on the database unless they have run  
8 a NIST SRM to make sure that their results are  
9 accurate and so on.

10           Again, a little bit more on the STRs. We  
11 are measuring the base pair size, converting that back  
12 to a repeat number, and that is what is being stored.

13           This is also used for paternity testing.  
14 Our reference materials are used to help with making  
15 sure that paternity testing is done properly. The  
16 American Association of Blood Banks, AABB, is who  
17 oversees how paternity testing is done.

18           This is what a full DNA profile looks like,  
19 just to illustrate the process. An internal size  
20 standard is run with every sample. Then we have the  
21 individual samples compared to an allelic ladder to  
22 actually get the genotypes for each individual site.

1 The measurement is performed by the allele size.

2 Another thing that is important to point  
3 out, of course, is that different genetic tests may  
4 use different PCR primers and therefore, because of  
5 binding site mutations, may produce different results  
6 because of allele dropout or null alleles. This is  
7 just to illustrate one example with a NIST SRM 2391b.

8 The Genomic DNA 8 actually has a dropout at  
9 this marker on chromosome 16 with a new kit that just  
10 came out from Applied Biosystems. You lose Allele 11.

11 This becomes important as laboratories are trying to  
12 verify if their procedure is working properly. So we  
13 go through and do a lot of work to calibrate and  
14 sequence the regions and define why a particular new  
15 assay or kit doesn't work properly.

16 We are funded primarily by the National  
17 Institute of Justice to do this work, as well as  
18 internal NIST funds. We have reference materials, as  
19 I mentioned. We have standard information. We have  
20 conducted a lot of interlaboratory studies. On the  
21 technology side, we are constantly developing new  
22 assays and new software. We have training materials.

1 You can go on our website, which is the STRBASE  
2 website, and download PowerPoints and other workshop  
3 information to help people learn more about this.

4 Just to get to where we are now, you will  
5 hear about some work going on in the Analytical  
6 Chemistry Division in just a moment. We are within  
7 the Biochemical Science Division. It is all  
8 underneath CSTL. We just, as recently as two months  
9 ago, formed an Applied Genetics Group, which is one of  
10 six groups doing work with genetic testing. These are  
11 the people that are involved there. Marcia Holden and  
12 Ross Haynes are new additions to our group, the former  
13 forensic group. We are really expanding in this area.

14 Our mission is to advance technology and  
15 traceability then with quality genetic measurements,  
16 continuing to help the forensic testing community but  
17 also clinical genetics, the ag bio tech, and then also  
18 DNA biometrics. There is a tremendous interest in  
19 this area and speeding up the process of DNA testing  
20 and making sure that is done accurately by the  
21 intelligence community, and so on.

22 This is some of our group expertise and

1 funding sources. We have primarily, again, expertise  
2 in reference material characterization, construction  
3 of new assays, a lot of work with sequencing, SNPs,  
4 STRs, and so on. Our primary funding is coming from  
5 NIJ, but we are also getting internal funding from  
6 NIST. We plan to strengthen our portfolio in the  
7 clinical genetics area.

8 DR. TEUTSCH: Dr. Butler, I hate to  
9 interrupt you, but we will need to wrap this up so we  
10 give everybody a chance.

11 DR. BUTLER: That's fine. These are our  
12 reference materials that are available right now.  
13 There are some slides from Mark Salit here on some of  
14 the RNA work that he has been doing.

15 We have been trying to help with  
16 nomenclature to help the genetic genealogy community  
17 to make sure that they are getting consistent results  
18 across laboratories.

19 This is one of the new ones. We are working  
20 on Huntington's disease, trying to have alleles that  
21 appropriately define each of the characteristics you  
22 would expect to see with Huntington's disease.

1           We have to decide, and we welcome input, in  
2 terms of what types of materials should we certify.  
3 We can certify for a sequence, a specific genotype,  
4 and of course, the quantity of DNA that is present.

5           We want to continue making information  
6 available to the public, as we have with our forensic  
7 stuff, and make that available for clinical  
8 diagnostics as well. Feel free to contact me if you  
9 have questions, and thanks again for your attention.

10           [Applause.]

11           DR. TEUTSCH: Thank you. I hate to rush you  
12 through all of that, but I want to give everybody else  
13 a fair chance.

14           Let's move on to Dr. Bunk, who is going to  
15 talk to us about proteomic tests. Welcome.

16                           **Proteomic Tests**

17                           **David Bunk, Ph.D.**

18           [PowerPoint presentation.]

19           DR. BUNK: Thank you very much. Thanks for  
20 the invitation to come speak to you this afternoon.  
21 Now for something slightly different, some protein  
22 work that we are doing at NIST. This is a new effort

1 in terms of helping to standardize and improve the  
2 measurement quality of proteomic clinical research.

3           Proteomics has not yet moved its way into  
4 the clinical diagnostic lab. I'm sure it will be  
5 entering soon enough. Right now proteomics is mostly  
6 used for medical research and medical diagnostic  
7 research. But the important thing here is that the  
8 measurements still need to be standardized. There  
9 still need to be high-quality measurements in order to  
10 make sure that the medical research is moving forward  
11 in the right directions and not leading down the wrong  
12 paths.

13           Just a quick definition in case we are not  
14 familiar with what proteomics is. Proteomics is the  
15 identification and quantification of all proteins of  
16 whatever sample you are talking about, whether it is  
17 the human proteome or specific tissue proteomes.

18           The interesting thing about proteomics,  
19 where it differs from genomics or metabolomics, is  
20 that very little research in proteomics actually  
21 measures intact proteins. You can divide proteomics  
22 into two distinct approaches: the top-down

1 proteomics, where intact proteins are measured, but  
2 the vast majority of proteomic research is done using  
3 an approach called bottom-up proteomics, in which  
4 proteins are degraded down into peptides and peptides  
5 are measured. Then we are relating that information  
6 back to try to figure out what is going on at the  
7 protein level.

8           That is important when we talk about how we  
9 standardize the measurement techniques because we need  
10 to know what is going on. If things are not being  
11 done at the protein level, then we don't necessarily  
12 need reference materials at the protein level. We can  
13 actually do a lot of work by having peptide-based  
14 reference materials.

15           Clinical proteomics is a subcommunity of all  
16 proteomics. Really, from my understanding, the goal  
17 of clinical proteomics is to discover new diagnostic  
18 biomarkers. It is both looking at the change in the  
19 structure of the concentration and interactions with  
20 different proteins in order to improve clinical  
21 diagnostics.

22           If we look at the clinical biomarker

1 pipeline, the first phase of biomarker work is the  
2 discovery phase, where we identify candidate  
3 biomarkers. That moves into the verification of these  
4 candidate protein biomarkers and finally into clinical  
5 validation. Currently, proteomics is being used in  
6 the discovery phase and the verification phase. The  
7 clinical validation is large-scale, large cohort  
8 studies in which most of the work is done using  
9 traditional techniques like amino assays.

10           But there is some belief that proteomic  
11 measurement technology will be used in clinical  
12 validation in the near future, and some of these  
13 technologies are being developed in order to do that.

14    But currently, proteomics is focused on the discovery  
15 phase and the candidate verification.

16           The distinction here is, in the discovery  
17 phase we are only talking about a small number of  
18 samples, maybe one healthy and one disease state  
19 samples. As we move into verification, we want to try  
20 to reduce the number of candidate biomarkers down to a  
21 manageable number, and so we use a larger amount of  
22 clinical samples. Of course, with clinical

1 validation, we are talking about thousands of patients  
2 in order to make sure that we have a true biomarker  
3 that has either diagnostic or prognostic utility.

4 Proteomics is still in its infancy, to a  
5 certain degree. There are a lot of problems in  
6 proteomic measurements. That is one of the reasons  
7 why NIST is involved. We want to bring a higher level  
8 measurement quality to proteomics.

9 Basically, I think one of the fundamental  
10 problems in proteomics now is that there are no  
11 quality metrics. There are no performance criteria.  
12 At least, there have not been in the last few years.  
13 There have been a number of studies published. The  
14 Human Proteomics Organization has published a number  
15 of studies where they are looking at interlaboratory  
16 comparisons of proteomic investigations.  
17 Unfortunately, many of the results are not very  
18 positive. There has been very little comparability in  
19 proteomics investigation from laboratory to  
20 laboratory. Obviously, if you want to develop  
21 technologies for doing clinical diagnostics, the field  
22 of proteomics had to be improved in order to get more

1 reliability and more comparability of the  
2 measurements.

3           The other issue is, it is very difficult to  
4 assess truth in proteomics. No one knows what the  
5 human proteome is. It is very difficult right now to  
6 assess agreements if you don't have standards. That  
7 is one of the reasons why we are here at NIST.

8           Unfortunately, all of this has led to the  
9 potential of diminishing opportunities for future  
10 research funding. On that note, a few years back we  
11 partnered with the National Cancer Institute on one of  
12 their initiatives and really discussed this.

13           One of the fundamental approaches we take in  
14 developing reference materials and reference  
15 measurement procedures for clinical diagnostics is  
16 partnering. We at NIST are not clinical chemists. I  
17 am not a clinical chemist. What we do know at NIST is  
18 the basic fundamentals of measurements.

19           So what we have to do is partner with  
20 professional organizations like the AACC, the IFCC,  
21 and the National Cancer Institute in this case, to  
22 bring their expertise into our efforts in

1 standardization. We apply our measurement skills, our  
2 knowledge of the fundamentals of measurement, and we  
3 bring in their application knowledge to solve the  
4 problems that are relevant to them.

5           The National Cancer Institute, about three  
6 years ago, developed a program to assess proteomic  
7 technologies because, basically, their advisors were  
8 telling them that they are not going to be funding  
9 much future research for proteomics because there was  
10 no payoff. So NCI decided they needed to initiate a  
11 program to evaluate the technologies.

12           It is a very interesting program because it  
13 is not about biomarker discovery. It is about  
14 validating the technology used in clinical proteomics.

15           The role that NIST plays in this program is  
16 that we are advising them in some of their  
17 interlaboratory study designs and developing the  
18 materials that are being used in interlaboratory  
19 studies. We are working with them to really help  
20 assess the technology ourselves. In the meantime, we  
21 are learning a lot about proteomics. So we are  
22 gaining the knowledge from the community by working

1 with these partners, and that is an important aspect.

2           Through this initiative we are working on  
3 interlaboratory studies but we are also developing the  
4 information we need to develop our own reference  
5 material program to support proteomics.

6           Let me go back to the biomarker pipeline  
7 once again to draw some distinctions here. Biomarker  
8 discovery is mostly a qualitative or relative  
9 quantitative measurement. This work is mostly done  
10 these days in tissues, so we are looking at the  
11 sources of disease, like cancer would be in tumors.

12           The verification stage is doing more of an  
13 absolute quantification of signature peptides from  
14 whatever the candidate biomarkers are. That is being  
15 done in mostly plasma because this is leading toward a  
16 more diagnostic platform. The instruments being used  
17 are much more qualitative.

18           Realizing that proteomics is playing a role  
19 in both of these fields, discovery and verification,  
20 NIST is developing reference materials to support both  
21 efforts because if you are not supporting the entire  
22 pipeline you are still going to run into problems. We

1 need to have reference materials and standard  
2 operating procedures and validation tools for the  
3 entire pipeline.

4           Let me just mention some terminology we use  
5 in terms of reference materials, which is horizontal  
6 versus vertical standards, or vertical reference  
7 materials.

8           When we are talking about a very complicated  
9 measurement technique or measurement pipeline like in  
10 proteomics, where there is sample collection, sample  
11 processing, instrumental analysis, and data analysis,  
12 there are a lot of places where problems can come in.

13          We approach that we take at NIST is to develop  
14 horizontal standards, which are standards which  
15 support measurement quality in individual steps along  
16 the way.

17           The other thing we also develop is vertical  
18 standards, which are very much application-specific  
19 standards.

20           A horizontal standard might be a standard  
21 that can be used to validate your data analysis,  
22 whereas a vertical standard would be a more complex,

1 application-specific standard like cholesterol in  
2 serum, where it is geared towards a much more specific  
3 measurement problem. The standard is carried through  
4 the entire measurement process.

5           In proteomics, that is the approach we are  
6 taking. We are developing horizontal standards and  
7 vertical standards in order to support the  
8 measurements.

9           In most cases, for a new measurement area it  
10 would be impossible to develop just vertical  
11 standards. The applications where proteomics is being  
12 used are very significant, so we would have to develop  
13 vertical standards for every specific application.

14           In clinical diagnostics, we have reference  
15 materials for cholesterol measurements, glucose  
16 measurements, creatinine measurements, and so on and  
17 so forth. That approach for proteomics just wouldn't  
18 work because there are too many areas in which it is  
19 used. So a horizontal standard is a way that we apply  
20 our resources to improve the measurement as best we  
21 can.

22           Currently, we have two reference materials

1 in production. The horizontal standard is a mixture  
2 of synthetic peptides, so it is not application-  
3 specific. It is designed to improve quality in mass  
4 spectrometry instrumentation. So all fields of  
5 proteomics that involve mass spectrometry could  
6 benefit from this reference material since this is a  
7 common point in their pipeline, making that a  
8 horizontal standard.

9           The other reference material we are  
10 currently developing is a yeast proteome reference  
11 material. This is a vertical standard, so this is  
12 designed for proteomic investigators to take a complex  
13 protein mixture through their entire proteomic  
14 pipeline and validate the procedures that are being  
15 used here.

16           We also have plans to develop more complex  
17 proteomics reference materials that are plasma-based  
18 for quantitative measurements.

19           In addition to those two new reference  
20 materials and the additional one that I mentioned of  
21 complex-matrix horizontal standards and vertical  
22 standards, we are also looking at developing higher-

1 order measurement tools for assessing performance of  
2 affinity reagents in proteomic arrays, multiplex  
3 arrays, as well as developing and validating novel  
4 affinity capture reagents. So we are looking at both  
5 improving technologies, developing standard operating  
6 procedures for people doing proteomics, as well as  
7 delivering services through reference materials, which  
8 people can use to validate their technologies and  
9 their techniques in proteomics.

10 We hope that by having all these different  
11 areas we can support the measurements that are going  
12 on in the clinical community and improve the outcome  
13 of clinical proteomic research.

14 Thank you.

15 DR. TEUTSCH: Thank you, Dr. Bunk.

16 [Applause.]

17 DR. TEUTSCH: Now, metabolomics. Dr.

18 Phinney, welcome.

19 **Metabolomic Tests**

20 **Karen Phinney, Ph.D.**

21 [PowerPoint presentation.]

22 DR. PHINNEY: Thank you. I'm very happy to

1 be here today. I appreciate the invitation. For  
2 those of you who are unfamiliar with metabolomics,  
3 this is something that has been going on in clinical  
4 chemistry for a long time. We have been measuring  
5 small molecules like glucose and cholesterol as part  
6 of diagnosing disease. To a great extent, this is  
7 just a fancy name for something that has been going on  
8 for a long time.

9           Metabolomics really represents the endpoint  
10 of genomics and proteomics. It is what you really get  
11 when you look at a sample of serum, plasma, or urine.

12 Those samples reflect the exact processes going on at  
13 that period of time.

14           There are some advantages to looking at the  
15 metabolome. It does represent an exact picture of the  
16 situation in the body at that point in time, and it is  
17 affected by things like diet, stress, exercise,  
18 disease, health, you name it. So instead of looking  
19 at the genome, where you look at what might happen,  
20 you actually look at the phenotype or what really did  
21 happen. To a great extent, this could be the ultimate  
22 in really doing disease diagnosis.

1           There are some other things to know about  
2 the metabolome. It is simpler than looking at either  
3 the genome or proteome. Even though in the metabolome  
4 you are still talking about thousands of potential  
5 metabolites, that is still a far simpler situation  
6 than thinking of hundreds of thousands of different  
7 proteins or even tens of thousands of different genes.

8           So, what is the goal of metabolomics. Why  
9 are we throwing around this fancy terminology. As I  
10 mentioned, we have been using metabolites as  
11 diagnostic markers for a long time, but we have tended  
12 to do them one at a time. We might look at glucose to  
13 diagnose diabetes and we look at cholesterol to look  
14 at risk of heart disease. But we haven't put all  
15 those pieces together. So what is unique about  
16 metabolomics is that it involves looking at panels or  
17 signatures of different analytes and their levels  
18 under different circumstances in the case of health or  
19 disease.

20           Ideally, you can use those patterns or those  
21 signatures to try and segment people into different  
22 groups and, ideally, use that as a way of doing

1 disease diagnosis.

2           If you look at the picture that is there on  
3 the left, that is an NMR pattern or NMR analysis of a  
4 particular sample. You can see there are lots of  
5 different peaks there. You can see, looking at the  
6 different color of spectra, that there are some  
7 differences in how those appear.

8           The goal of metabolomics is to try to look  
9 at those different patterns and to be able to say  
10 something about different levels of particular  
11 metabolites representing some signature. So, does it  
12 represent a healthy person or a diseased person.

13           Ideally, we would like to get to the  
14 situation that you see on the right, where you can put  
15 people in different boxes and say in this particular  
16 population we see this signature or these different  
17 metabolites at these particular levels and in a  
18 healthy person we see a different pattern. If you can  
19 do that with some reliability, you could use that as a  
20 diagnostic tool.

21           Now, one of the reasons to do this is also  
22 to try and identify places where we could intervene in

1 a disease state. If we know that in a particular  
2 disease certain metabolites were elevated or  
3 decreased, we could then try to intervene in that  
4 particular metabolic pathway through pharmaceuticals  
5 or some other therapy. So metabolomics does represent  
6 one potential mechanism to identify new therapies, and  
7 there is certainly a lot of activity in this area in  
8 the pharmaceutical industry.

9           The drug industry is also interested in  
10 looking at this as a mechanism to identify toxicity.  
11 If you can identify particular markers that indicate  
12 liver toxicity, for example, and you can measure those  
13 in a multiplexed way, you might be able to predict  
14 ahead of time whether a particular pharmaceutical is  
15 going to have adverse effects.

16           That would certainly be very valuable. We  
17 know these days we hear a lot in the news about things  
18 that make it onto the market only to be withdrawn  
19 later. Certainly, that is why the pharmaceutical  
20 industry has such an interest in this area.

21           Finally, as you saw in one of the first  
22 slides there, all these things are related. The

1 metabolome can be traced all the way back to the  
2 genome. If you look at patterns of metabolites, you  
3 might be able to say something about gene function  
4 that assumes something about the metabolome, the  
5 proteome, and the genome all at the same time. That  
6 is quite a lot of information to try to capture, but  
7 under ideal circumstances you might be able to do  
8 that.

9           So, what are some of the issues. Where does  
10 standardization come in. If you think about trying to  
11 measure thousands of metabolites simultaneously, you  
12 are talking about very large and complex data sets.  
13 As David mentioned, there are always issues in terms  
14 of instrumentation, sample collection, and sample  
15 handling. So, how can you get to a point where you  
16 can say with some certainty that the pattern of  
17 metabolites that you see is really representative of a  
18 particular condition.

19           There are a number of these issues:  
20 sampling, instrument variations, platform variations,  
21 and software, just in dealing with these very large  
22 data sets.

1           Once you get your data, how do you pick out  
2 which things actually mean something. There are  
3 thousands of metabolites but maybe only three are  
4 relevant to the particular condition that you are  
5 studying. This comes down to software and it comes  
6 down to making assumptions about the data that you  
7 have. Clearly, in those situations there is room for  
8 error and there is room for differences in  
9 interpretation.

10           Finally, before we can get to a clinical  
11 diagnostic setting, we need to actually validate that  
12 the patterns of metabolites we think are useful in  
13 diagnosis really are. Certainly, that comes back to  
14 looking at large populations of people and making sure  
15 that you really can say with some certainty that you  
16 are making an accurate diagnosis based on this  
17 metabolite signature.

18           About two years ago, I guess, NIH came to  
19 us. They have been funding a number of investigators  
20 for metabolomics technology development. But along  
21 with that effort they realized the importance of some  
22 standardization and some common way for people to

1 evaluate the technology that they were developing,  
2 some common mechanism for them to use. So they  
3 approached NIST about developing reference material  
4 for metabolomics.

5           We have been involved in that effort over  
6 about the past two years, and this material will be  
7 introduced I think probably early in 2009. So we are  
8 coming close to at least the end of the first stage of  
9 this process.

10           This reference material is actually a plasma  
11 pool. The reason that we did that is we didn't want  
12 to represent any particular part of a population. We  
13 wanted this to be indicative of a mix of male and  
14 female, different age groups, and healthy individuals,  
15 and we wanted it to also have some of the ethnic  
16 characteristics of the U.S. population. So the  
17 samples that were pooled to prepared this material  
18 came from African Americans, Asians, Caucasians, and,  
19 again, both male and female individuals.

20           One of the reasons that we did that was that  
21 when we have to prepare this material again in, say,  
22 10 years, we wanted to be able to prepare it in a very

1 similar way. That is why we set these criteria in  
2 designing the material.

3           We have a lot of experience in measuring  
4 individual metabolites. As Dr. May mentioned, we have  
5 a number of different reference materials for  
6 individual metabolites in serum, the traditional  
7 analytes like cholesterol, glucose, and creatinine.  
8 We have measured those same analytes in this  
9 particular reference material, so we will have  
10 certified values for probably 40 different  
11 metabolites, everything from fatty acids to glucose,  
12 to hormones.

13           But we also realized that people want  
14 something more than that. They would like to know  
15 what other metabolites are present. So the effort  
16 that we are focusing on right now is more of a  
17 qualitative effort to see what techniques do we have  
18 available, either at NIST or through collaborators,  
19 where we can identify additional metabolites and also  
20 provide that information.

21           Clearly, there is the potential to use this  
22 material in a variety of different ways. Depending

1 upon your particular study, if you are looking at  
2 glucose metabolism or if you are looking at kidney  
3 disease, your interests may be different. So in order  
4 to make this material relevant to as many different  
5 people as possible, we are trying to provide as much  
6 information as we can.

7           Now, clearly, this is a starting point in  
8 terms of providing standards for this particular area.

9 It is an evolving field, and we certainly recognize  
10 that. We do see the potential for additional  
11 reference materials and different standards here, and  
12 also tools in the area of bioinformatics. One of the  
13 big questions here is how do you handle these large  
14 data sets. How do you insure their reliability. How  
15 do you compare data from different instrument  
16 platforms or different laboratories. I think these  
17 are all questions that will be coming up as this field  
18 moves forward. It is still very early on.

19           We also realize that there may be a need for  
20 reference materials to focus on more specific  
21 populations. It might be a group of individuals with  
22 heart disease or it might be male versus female. The



1 [PowerPoint presentation.]

2 DR. GUTMAN: I can't think of a better swan  
3 song than to stumble across this topic, so I thank  
4 you.

5 FDA has a longstanding interest in  
6 standards. In fact, the original regulations in FDA  
7 for our primetime submission, the 510(k), which is  
8 what we use for me-too devices, call for the use of  
9 standards in equivalency decisions.

10 In the early '80s FDA initiated development  
11 of standardized, traceable methods and expected  
12 thresholds for both glucose and hemoglobin, took them  
13 to the public, and I guess they weren't ready for  
14 primetime yet because we couldn't make the sale.

15 So what we resorted to -- and in fact the  
16 regs were subsequently changed to accommodate for the  
17 nascent life of standards in the '80s -- is we changed  
18 the regs to call for special controls.

19 Our program is largely based on two  
20 operative terms for me-too devices: showing that they  
21 are substantially equivalent to a predicate and, for  
22 novel, high-risk devices, showing that they are de

1 novo, safe, and effective. Neither of these  
2 regulatory submissions actually calls for or requires  
3 identification of either standards, traceability, or  
4 performance against standards. I would argue that  
5 that is a weakness in our regulatory toolbox.

6           That has, of course, not been a deterrent to  
7 our renegade workgroup. We continue to rail for  
8 standards. FDA was a founding member of the CLSI. We  
9 are an active member of the ISO Technical Committee  
10 212, an active member of the IBD Subgroup of the  
11 Global Harmonization Task Force, and an early  
12 proponent of the CDC's Standardization Program. So  
13 the lack of standards does not demonstrate a lack of  
14 enthusiasm on the part of our workgroup.

15           In fact, if you bother to look at our  
16 webpage, you can see that when we write guidance we  
17 frequently reference standards. When we develop  
18 special controls, we frequently reference standards.  
19 In fact, if you look at our decision summaries, the  
20 more "with it" companies will in fact reference  
21 standards.

22           We also have an interest in the material

1 standards that NIST is developing. We always attempt  
2 to identify usable standards, whether they are NIST,  
3 whether they are CDC, whether they are WHO, or whether  
4 they come from other legitimate sources. We have  
5 experience with the use of material standards in both  
6 pre- and post-market programs.

7           In terms of the formal process, there is a  
8 formal recognition process, at least for methods  
9 standards. About two dozen members of my office  
10 participate actively. We have recognized a number of  
11 CLSI standards and a smaller number of ISO standards.  
12 They are all, again, found on our webpage.

13           There is a formal process that these  
14 standards, once recognized, can be used in the context  
15 of pre-market review. There is a particular entity  
16 called the abbreviated 510(k), where companies can  
17 actually conform to standards. That increases the  
18 certainty and decreases the negotiation between FDA  
19 and the sponsor submitting that particular standard.

20           In point of fact, there is usually partial  
21 rather than complete conformance. The CLSI standards  
22 are an interesting hybrid, some more geared towards

1 laboratory practice and manufacturing practice. It  
2 would be fair to say the abbreviated 510(k) is not a  
3 perfect program.

4 I would also point out that informal use of  
5 standards is very frequent. Often pedigreed  
6 materials, sometimes from CDC, sometimes from WHO,  
7 sometimes from other sources, may actually carry a  
8 floundering company over the threshold in terms of  
9 pre-market review. While our pre-market review has, I  
10 think, weak regulatory tools, the quality system regs  
11 that are part of our post-market compliance program do  
12 in fact have very beguiling portions of the regs that  
13 might speak to. if FDA were aggressive in the pursuit  
14 of those regs, the use of standards. So there are  
15 interesting tools to look at in the future if there  
16 was a call for better standardization products.

17 There certainly are incentives to do this.  
18 The IVD directive in Europe very explicitly calls for  
19 the use of standards. Our transparent posting of  
20 decision summaries provides a reward for use of  
21 standard materials or methods because it becomes a  
22 matter of public information. I would argue the

1 STAR\*D initiative and other efforts to provide  
2 clinical standardization will only be as good as the  
3 ability to have an underpinning of analytical  
4 standardization as well.

5           That being said, there is a long journey  
6 ahead. The truth is the status quo for routine assays  
7 -- PSA, troponin, d-dimer are three of my favorites --  
8 is absolute noncongruence. If you look at proficiency  
9 testing surveys, you will be astounded by the  
10 laboratory and company differences. You can get a  
11 heart attack simply moving from one ER to another.

12           The status quo for new assays is worse  
13 because there is no proficiency testing. There is no  
14 QC material. It is gratifying to see that NIST is  
15 starting to move forward, but there is a mountain of  
16 new assays, some of them protected by IP, that might  
17 make it very difficult to create cross-lab standards.

18           This has all been further complicated by the  
19 fact that in the year 2009 we actually get it in terms  
20 of the complexity of sample procurement and the whimsy  
21 of pre-analytical systems in terms of impacting the  
22 results any particular system might generate.

1           At the end of the rainbow, there is a pot of  
2 gold. I think Mike may talk about this in more  
3 detail. There is a shift towards evidence-based  
4 medicine, even laboratory medicine.

5           Thank God, because there is an escalation in  
6 healthcare costs that laboratory medicine could help  
7 or could hinder which is not sustainable. In fact,  
8 consumers are increasingly interested in quality.  
9 That being said, there is no free lunch. All of this  
10 will take a lot of work.

11           Fortunately, there is free literature about  
12 standards, literature written, usually by dark poets,  
13 often poets who died young like Dylan or Plath. I  
14 will let her have the final word.

15           "Cold worlds shake from the oar.

16           "The spirit of blackness is in us, it is in  
17 the fishes.

18           "A snag is lifting a valedictory, pale hand;

19           "Stars open among the lilies,

20           "Are you not blinded by such expressionless  
21 sirens?

22           "This is the silence of astounded souls."

1           This is the path forward for standards.

2 Thank you.

3           [Applause.]

4           DR. TEUTSCH: That last slide is going to  
5 give us a lot to think about.

6           I'm not sure where to go. I guess we will  
7 go to Dr. Cossman.

8           DR. COSSMAN: That is a tough act to follow.

9           DR. TEUTSCH: Thank you for being here and  
10 talking about a little bit about the clinical  
11 perspective from the Critical Path Institute.

12                           **Clinical Perspective**

13                           **Jeff Cossman, M.D.**

14           [PowerPoint presentation.]

15           DR. COSSMAN: Thank you very much. Steve  
16 Gutman is a tough act to follow. But, Steve, I just  
17 want to say thank you for all your service at FDA. It  
18 has been a real pleasure working with you, and I look  
19 forward to whatever you are doing in the future and  
20 maybe having a chance to work with you that way, too.

21           I'm here to talk to you today about  
22 something that we are doing at the Critical Path

1 Institute which may impact standardization of  
2 diagnostics in genetics. Let me explain as we go  
3 along here what this concept is.

4 In the development of diagnostics, we can  
5 expect delays not just because FDA regulates it but  
6 delays in many of the regulatory paths of diagnostics.

7 Many times we see surprises. A diagnostic  
8 manufacturer may submit an application to FDA and it  
9 may be returned saying, you need to do this again, the  
10 data is not prepared in a way that we need, we don't  
11 understand it, and you need to redo this for a variety  
12 of reasons.

13 Or there may be surprises on the part of  
14 FDA, receiving data that they say is inconsistent or  
15 shoddy or not the way that they needed it in the first  
16 place.

17 In order to reduce surprises from either  
18 side, we have started to create a standards method  
19 that might help both the diagnostic manufacturers and  
20 the FDA communicate with each other.

21 What is needed for this change. This is  
22 something that has been a pattern that we have used

1 through Critical Path Institute. We are a nonprofit  
2 agency that is not part of the FDA, not part of  
3 industry, and in fact is not part of the government at  
4 all. It is a neutral party that helps in  
5 communication between the FDA, industry, patient  
6 advocacy groups, and researchers in order to  
7 communicate among them around science; to improve the  
8 methods that are used to develop drugs and diagnostics  
9 and bring them to the public and to the consumers.

10               We have a number of consortia at the  
11 Critical Path Institute, or C-Path, which involve  
12 multiple companies signing agreements and working with  
13 FDA, and in some cases EMEA in Europe, to create best-  
14 of-class methods. These can be in safety; efficacy;  
15 in the case of Warfarin, dosing; and in the case of  
16 Alzheimer's disease and Parkinson's disease, a  
17 coalition against major disease in which the largest  
18 pharmaceutical companies in the world sign an  
19 agreement to work and share data.

20               What we are talking about here in all of  
21 these cases is a way of verifying the quality and  
22 accuracy of biomarkers; sharing information across

1 these groups; finding out what is the best-of-class  
2 method for predicting safety or efficacy in a  
3 particular condition and sharing that information;  
4 agreeing on a consensus on what is the best-of-class  
5 method; and having FDA accept this method so that when  
6 a company comes with a new submission they will know  
7 that the FDA already understands these biomarkers and  
8 has, in a sense, preaccepted them as part of their  
9 application for a new drug.

10           Now, what we have seen in running these  
11 consortia, because C-Path creates and leads these  
12 consortia, is a common theme of diagnostics that are  
13 needed. What we felt was there may be a role here for  
14 establishing an entity that could provide a means for  
15 standardizing the testing of diagnostics before they  
16 are submitted to the FDA.

17           We see many bottlenecks along the way.  
18 There are problems in the development of the data that  
19 goes to the FDA and the creation, as you have heard,  
20 of standard samples. Ten companies may have an assay  
21 against, say, troponin or d-dimers, but they are not  
22 testing them against the same standard analyte sample.

1     So the data that is coming in to FDA may not  
2     necessarily be comparable.  So if you are looking for  
3     a me-too device or a 510(k), we can't always prove  
4     that the test is equivalent because it hasn't been  
5     tested on the same clinical material.

6             What we are trying to do is reduce the  
7     number of surprises that FDA is giving to industry,  
8     telling them to redo the study, or the other way  
9     around, surprises to FDA from industry.  We want to  
10    look at ways to improve the efficiency of the  
11    requirement for the highest standard of approval at  
12    FDA, which is the PMA, and how companies can improve  
13    their efficiency in getting to that very high bar.

14            Finally, there are bottlenecks, as you have  
15    just heard, in lack of evidence for payers.  How does  
16    a payer know whether the test performs as required.  
17    An insurance company or CMS is going to pay for a  
18    test.  What evidence does it have that that test is  
19    valuable and actually does the performance that it  
20    claims that it does.

21            So, how do we improve.  We improve by the  
22    ways that we have already done in the other consortia

1 that we are involved in, and that is to find the best-  
2 of-class methods, to look for real proof and real  
3 evidence of reliability, and also for a standard  
4 submission process. In other words, multiple  
5 companies submitting data now submit them in different  
6 formats, different kinds of data, different ways of  
7 analyzing the data, different clinical samples. Why  
8 don't we standardize that and make life easier for  
9 those reviewers at FDA who are looking at diagnostic  
10 device applications.

11           So what we thought was, what we don't have  
12 for diagnostics is an underwriter's lab. This would  
13 be not a proficiency testing agency like CAP but,  
14 instead, further upstream in the pipeline. Diagnostic  
15 manufacturers develop tests, submit those for beta  
16 testing, say at universities, and that data goes into  
17 the submission to FDA.

18           Why not have a standardized format, a single  
19 agency whose sole focus is only on evaluating these  
20 diagnostic tests before they are submitted to FDA.  
21 They can be an independent body and put a seal of  
22 approval on it saying, yes, this test did perform as

1 claimed. We ran it exactly the way it says in the  
2 manufacturer's instructions. We ran it on  
3 standardized samples. We can attest that, with no  
4 incentive as to whether this test is approved or not,  
5 it did perform as claimed.

6           Why not do this in diagnostics. It is done  
7 in many other industries: in semiconductors, in food  
8 safety, for drugs. This is not a new idea. It is  
9 just a new idea for this particular industry.

10           To quote a famous poet, Steve Gutman, we see  
11 that the FDA is interested in this. You have just  
12 heard him say the FDA is interested in finding  
13 standards for diagnostics. In this case he is talking  
14 about targeted therapy. Our original plan was to  
15 focus specifically on targeted therapy in cancer, but  
16 for this standards laboratory we have heard from  
17 industry that they would like to see this service  
18 applied and be available for any kind of clinical  
19 laboratory diagnostic.

20           So what Steve told us, as you can see in the  
21 middle paragraph, this could be "a template for the  
22 validation of diagnostics in targeted cancer therapy,"

1 but any kind of therapy. This could be a template and  
2 a way to evaluate diagnostics before they go to FDA.

3           The concept here is to have two levels of  
4 evaluation of a diagnostic. One is simply  
5 performance. Does it tell you the correct level of  
6 whatever the analyte is.

7           Second would be a much more complex one, and  
8 that would be where you have outcomes information  
9 attached to the clinical samples so that you could  
10 determine the relative value of this diagnostic in  
11 predicting a clinical value such as response to  
12 therapy and association with a particular clinical  
13 condition.

14           That information would be put into a report,  
15 certified as to the accuracy of the test, and then  
16 that data could be used voluntarily by the  
17 manufacturer in their submission for FDA approval.

18           So, what needs does this type of testing  
19 meet. One of the goals here is something that this  
20 session is all about: having a standard repository of  
21 samples that could be used and normalized, and to  
22 create methods so that they could be reused as

1 consumed. Then tests could be analyzed on the same  
2 samples repeatedly and competing tests could be  
3 compared if manufacturers wished to.

4           It would be a neutral site. It could  
5 determine whether or not a new test equals the  
6 predicate, or is equivalent to it. For lab-developed  
7 tests such as genetics, which may not end up being  
8 submitted to the FDA as an in vitro diagnostic, it  
9 could be used to evaluate those as well so that  
10 providers, consumers, payers, and investors would know  
11 whether or not the genetic test or other laboratory-  
12 developed test performed as claimed. In other words,  
13 did it detect the SNP. Did it do what it was said to  
14 do.

15           What does this do. It improves reporting to  
16 FDA, hopefully improving for the diagnostic  
17 manufacturer their chances of having their data  
18 accepted. Second, it does provide a format for  
19 comparing competing products. If companies wished to,  
20 they could have their assays run in a bake-off. You  
21 could have multiple companies competing with the same  
22 assay, all tested at a neutral site on the same

1 analytes.

2 All of this information, whether it is  
3 competing or whether it is single case-by-case  
4 information, provides evidence to the community that  
5 needs to know whether or not a test performs as is  
6 claimed.

7 Now, we have talked about this. We are now  
8 starting to develop this laboratory. We have seed  
9 funding. It is starting in the State of Arizona. The  
10 state has provided an economic development package.  
11 We have a couple of people who are helping to start  
12 this here today with us: Mary Ellen Demars and Ralph  
13 Martel. We are looking to take on our first  
14 demonstration case, whether it is in genetics or in  
15 cancer. We are not sure yet. We are looking for  
16 ideas that would fit very specific criteria for first  
17 demonstration cases.

18 Because people have heard about this, we  
19 have been asked a number of questions. One, is this  
20 just another regulatory hurdle, which is exactly what  
21 I would think this is. I used to run a clinical  
22 laboratory. If I had heard about this and didn't

1 quite understand it, I would think the last thing I  
2 need is somebody else coming into my laboratory to  
3 inspect it and regulate it and find something else  
4 wrong.

5           This is not what this is about. This is not  
6 a regulatory body. It has no regulatory authority.  
7 It is completely voluntary. The whole idea is to be  
8 helpful to the manufacturer or the developer of the  
9 diagnostic.

10           How does this United States Diagnostic  
11 Standards Lab, USDS, relate to federal agencies and  
12 other agencies that are involved. We are looking at  
13 ways of becoming synergistic and complementary. We  
14 have had detailed discussions with NIST and Mike Amos  
15 as to how they could develop standards for the  
16 platforms for this particular testing, as well as with  
17 many of the other agencies across federal government.

18           What happens if the test result comes out  
19 and it is not acceptable or not useful to the  
20 manufacturer? They don't have to use it. They own  
21 that data. It is their data. They can keep it. It  
22 is not published. They can do whatever they want with



1 DR. WILLIAMS: This is for Jeff and relates  
2 to the last slide. We have certainly seen in other  
3 circumstances where "voluntary" things have become  
4 ersatz regulatory issues. Look at the NCQA, the Joint  
5 Commission, and others. In some sense, if you tie  
6 this to data that will be used by payers and other  
7 reimbursers, the people that control the purse  
8 strings, they may say, we are not going to reimburse  
9 any tests that haven't gone through this process.  
10 Then you have a de facto regulatory system.

11 While I think this is really important and  
12 this is definitely the direction that things need to  
13 be going, I would ask you to respond to that issue.

14 DR. COSSMAN: I don't know if everybody  
15 heard the question. Maybe I can paraphrase it. This  
16 could end up becoming too successful in the sense that  
17 even though it is not a regulatory body and there is  
18 no federal mandate that you have to go through this,  
19 it still may be something that everybody wants because  
20 the reimbursers, the payers, may require this  
21 certification or this process before they pay. It  
22 would then become a de facto regulatory body.

1           That is a real problem. I can't tell you I  
2 have a glib answer how to solve something like that.  
3 What we would like to do is start very small with  
4 single bites and look at one area and see the pattern  
5 that emerges in terms of the reflex of the payers.

6           First of all, we have to start small because  
7 there is no way that you could start with all  
8 diagnostics all at once. You are looking at the  
9 entire agency so far. We are 2.5 FTEs.

10           [Laughter.]

11           DR. COSSMAN: So it is going to be hard to  
12 handle all of diagnostics right when we open the door.  
13 We are looking for one. One of the criteria would be  
14 that exact issue. We have heard that same question  
15 from others, that we would be swamped and wouldn't  
16 have the bandwidth to be able to manage this and it  
17 would become a second FDA. We don't want to be a  
18 second FDA. We have no interest in doing that. If  
19 that becomes a non-starter, then this won't happen.

20           But we think that this is so valuable to do,  
21 from what we have been hearing from people, that we  
22 need to find a solution to that. I'm open to people

1 who have ideas and are creative and innovative here.  
2 We need to be problem-solving. But we don't want to  
3 create more of a problem than already exists.

4 DR. TEUTSCH: Andrea.

5 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: To take the next  
6 step on that question of becoming a de facto  
7 regulator, how do you envision not going that route?  
8 What I see is that people start using it and third-  
9 party payers get hold of this information. Then you  
10 can require an academic laboratory or any other  
11 laboratory to send the data to this place in order to  
12 be reimbursed by any of the third-party payers.

13 DR. COSSMAN: I think it is a similar issue.  
14 How do we not become a regulatory body. That is in  
15 terms of payers. Is that what you are asking? If  
16 payers would require it, then you would become a de  
17 facto regulatory body. I think it is a similar point.

18 We don't have the solution for that. What  
19 we are saying is we would start small, with a single  
20 example, move out from there, and see what emerges in  
21 terms of the pattern from payers. We are just  
22 starting our discussions with payers to see how they

1 would react to this.

2           In fact, the very first one I talked to --  
3 and I won't say what company, but it is a very large  
4 insurance company -- said, we at the insurance company  
5 don't have the bandwidth to be able to determine which  
6 test someone ran. We just pay a CPT code. We don't  
7 know if they ran the test that worked well or the test  
8 that worked medium well or the test that doesn't work  
9 at all. We don't have an inspection method to be able  
10 to determine that. So right now, they wouldn't even  
11 be able to use this information. Even that hasn't  
12 happened yet.

13           DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: They don't have the  
14 means today of identifying this, but they can ask  
15 that. If you are going to be submitting claims to  
16 particular third-party payers, then you submit  
17 information that you have been cleared.

18           DR. COSSMAN: They could.

19           DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: We already have  
20 regulatory bodies to look at the quality of the  
21 testing. It seems to me that it could be, in the  
22 future, another hurdle to this.

1 DR. COSSMAN: Exactly. If this looks like  
2 it is an insoluble problem and is another hurdle, that  
3 is a deal-stopper. What we want to do is be  
4 innovative and creative here and find solutions for  
5 getting through this so that we can find ways around  
6 it. I don't have the answer here today, but if people  
7 have ideas, we are open to suggestions. I would be  
8 happy to talk to people in the insurance industry and  
9 CMS and see if there are ways that we can do this so  
10 that it works in a way that doesn't open up a  
11 floodgate of problems but rather is problem-solving.

12 DR. TEUTSCH: Great. I know we would like  
13 to have some more discussion. Thank you very much,  
14 Dr. Cossman. We appreciate that and your initiative  
15 in addressing this important topic.

16 Our final speaker is Mike Amos, who we all  
17 know. He will talk a little bit about the future  
18 directions in clinical diagnostic standards  
19 development.

20 Mike, we are going to hold you to your 10  
21 minutes so we do have time for some discussion at the  
22 end. Take it away.

1

2

**Future Directions in Clinical Diagnostic**

3

**Standards Development**

4

**Michael Amos, Ph.D.**

5

[PowerPoint presentation.]

6

DR. AMOS: Not a problem, not a problem.

7

Thanks for your attention. I hope you appreciate the

8

level of detail and precision that my NIST colleagues

9

go to to provide standards for the various

10

applications. I think John's table that talked about

11

the various levels of who uses them and then Dave's

12

table talking about the horizontal versus vertical

13

standards gave you an idea about how we think about

14

things.

15

I should probably bring my other hat up here

16

because my boss, who is Dr. May, told me to put this

17

disclaimer on here. I'm going to talk about things

18

that we have learned over the last couple of years

19

through many talks with many different people about

20

what they consider the future of diagnostics and where

21

things are going. At the same time, these are not

22

official NIST programs or ideas but just food for

1 thought for you.

2           What I want to talk about today are some of  
3 the harsh realities that are really going to drive  
4 health care change in the future, some lessons learned  
5 and what I think will happen, the fact that laboratory  
6 medicine will drive a lot of this change, some  
7 measurement challenges and the role measurement  
8 technologies and standards will play, and a potential  
9 plan to enable the change.

10           Where we are is kind of scary when you  
11 consider that about 83 percent of our total health  
12 care costs go to cover chronic diseases, whereas the  
13 rest of it is only about 17 percent. This constitutes  
14 almost \$1.7 trillion out of the \$2 trillion that we  
15 spent in 2005. Forty-three percent of that is spent  
16 on hospitalizations. The scary part is the most  
17 expensive to treat are among the fastest-growing  
18 reasons for hospitalizations, according to AHRQ.

19           Millions of people suffer from diseases that  
20 there is little known about the genetic basis. We  
21 have a growing number of problems with kids taking  
22 drugs for chronic diseases. More and more kids are

1 being diagnosed with chronic diseases for which they  
2 are being treated. Diabetes is running rampant and  
3 growing at a rate of about, I think, 5 percent a year  
4 for type 1 diabetes. Kids under the age of five are  
5 now taking drugs for type 2 diabetes.

6           The problem is that things are not going  
7 that well in medical research. The innovation gap is  
8 really widening. There is more money going into  
9 research with not great returns on investment. There  
10 are more and more manufacturer-reported adverse events  
11 to the FDA all the time. It has grown dramatically  
12 since 1990, with billions of dollars of drugs coming  
13 off the market because of toxicity.

14           The future is not that great for  
15 diagnostics, really, if you base it on what has  
16 happened since 1995. This is, as best as we can tell  
17 -- and Steve's group helped me put this together --  
18 the complete list of single protein biomarkers that  
19 have been approved by the FDA. There may be one or  
20 two recent ones. But I went through the FDA website  
21 again before I did this, and I couldn't find any more.

22           So things are not really looking that great

1 in the future. Our grandchildren are going to be  
2 spending more money than they earn on health care.  
3 Like Steve said, these trends are not sustainable and  
4 a new development paradigm is really needed.

5           So, what have we learned. We have learned  
6 that the human body is very complex. It is really not  
7 just made up of all those individual components.  
8 Really, disease is caused by perturbations in very,  
9 very complex biological networks. It is not simple  
10 pathways anymore. Forget what you learned in high  
11 school. There is no such thing as a metabolic  
12 pathway. It is one of these globby things.

13           So, what have we learned. Disease is a  
14 result of perturbations in these pathways. Genomics  
15 has been helpful, and it will continue to be helpful  
16 but it is limited. Only a very small number of single  
17 protein biomarkers are good indicators or predictors  
18 of a limited number of diseases, and more complete  
19 understanding of human physiology is needed in order  
20 to identify good biomarkers.

21           What is going to happen. Medicine will  
22 focus on keeping people well. It has to. The only

1 way we are going to really catch up in health care is  
2 by keeping people out of the hospital. That is  
3 possible. The way to do it is the fact that  
4 laboratory medicine will probably lead the way. -  
5 Omics will dominate. Complex disease signatures that  
6 are comprised of hundreds or thousands of data points  
7 will really be the biomarkers of the future.

8           Drug companies will develop their markets  
9 around interventional therapeutics and treatments like  
10 cholesterol and statins. They will use the same  
11 model. It will be based around these complex disease  
12 signatures. Disease signatures are measurable  
13 alterations in complex biochemical networks.

14           So, what happens. You get abnormalities in  
15 all this stuff, and you can do multiplex measurements  
16 and computer integration to develop disease  
17 signatures. There are a bunch of these things. We  
18 have no idea what these disease signatures are going  
19 to look like. Probably, it is going to be some sort  
20 of risk score, a number from one to 100, whether  
21 somebody is going to get this disease or not, but we  
22 really don't know what that is going to be. We hope

1 that it is going to enable scientists and physicians  
2 to make better decisions.

3           Discovery decisions will increase the drug  
4 pipeline and all those things. Better clinical  
5 decisions help people, not just the drug and  
6 diagnostic companies.

7           Really, in between wellness and symptoms are  
8 these transitional states. That is where the focus is  
9 going to have to be. We are really looking at markers  
10 that occur years before disease symptoms occur. They  
11 often occur long before people realize they are sick.

12           They are unique biochemical markers. They  
13 can distinguish health from sickness. They are going  
14 to be person-specific. The rules of clinical trials  
15 are going to have to change because each person will  
16 end up serving as their own control.

17           There are typically going to be parameters  
18 in blood. Those probably are the true biomarkers that  
19 we are all looking for and that could be detected with  
20 proper technology.

21           A disease signature is like a radar  
22 signature. A good radar operator can identify a blip

1 on a radar screen that is a bad guy versus a good guy.

2 What we want to be able to do is develop similar  
3 technologies in the future for diagnostics.

4 One potential concept is being espoused by  
5 Dr. Lee Hood, who talks about organ-specific blood  
6 protein fingerprints as a potential way to do this.  
7 He calls it systems medicine. It integrates  
8 measurements and computers. It is basically taking a  
9 drop of blood, putting it on some analytical platform,  
10 putting it in an instrument, and then getting some  
11 data out to enable the complete visualization of what  
12 is going on in your body. That is the dream.

13 Why is this critical and what is going to  
14 happen. Today the healthcare markets are based on the  
15 number of sick people. Every drug company bases their  
16 market numbers and projections on the number of people  
17 they can treat. That is based on the number of people  
18 that they project will come down with a disease based  
19 on historical data.

20 The metrics of morbidity and mortality show  
21 the outcome is that people suffer and die of chronic  
22 diseases. It is not changing. We will see \$4

1 trillion in healthcare costs projected by the year  
2 2015. Like Janet Woodcock said, that is probably not  
3 sustainable.

4           The healthcare markets could be based on the  
5 number of people with preventable diseases. If that  
6 were the case, the metric would be the number of  
7 people positive for a valid predictive biomarker. The  
8 outcome would be that more people would die of trauma  
9 and in their sleep from old age, rather than spend 70  
10 percent of healthcare dollars in the last two years of  
11 their life in terminal care.

12           Potential savings are, just for diabetes,  
13 probably at least \$50 billion. Diabetes is more  
14 expensive to treat than cancer. We all know that.

15           What is going to happen is visualization of  
16 disease signatures. What kind of standards will be  
17 needed for this type of thing. We are really talking  
18 about the complete spectrum, but we will have to take  
19 a very logical and structured approach to it and take  
20 into account all the things you heard today from my  
21 colleagues: horizontal versus vertical standards, and  
22 what are the highest priorities of things that we

1 should go after.

2           That is really what Willie talked about. We  
3 felt, and the community felt, that protein measurement  
4 science is probably one of the biggest challenges.

5           These are some of the things that we are  
6 going to have to do. But two fronts are really to  
7 promote discovery of disease signatures and then, on  
8 the back end, clinical analysis of these disease  
9 signatures.

10           I love my boss, but I have to disagree with  
11 you. We will always have this conversation, Willie.  
12 I think, coming from industry, if I had had a set of  
13 standards that I could anchor my tests against where I  
14 didn't have to guess and empirically try to figure out  
15 what my assays were really doing, then I could have  
16 sped up things a lot in my assay development.

17           I think the things that Dave is trying to do  
18 with proteomics and anchoring what I call the platform  
19 standards of mass spec to make sure that your mass  
20 spec works properly, are going to really drive the  
21 future.

22           You have transition states and systems

1 medicine. That is one approach. Developing disease  
2 signatures to usher in the age of individual  
3 therapeutics and improve quality of life and help in  
4 economic security, which is, as Willie showed, part of  
5 our mission.

6           What is preventing us from getting there.  
7 Basically, it is the capabilities of doing these  
8 things, among many other things, but these are pretty  
9 much the major issues. It is really doing these types  
10 of measurements and the ability to analyze these types  
11 of things.

12           Here is a potential opportunity and a  
13 potential way of stimulating the advent of new  
14 technology. I think we are woefully deficient in our  
15 ability to measure proteins, and that is a real issue.

16 I think we are at about the same place we were at the  
17 beginning of the Human Genome Project.

18           One way to stimulate interest is to have a  
19 mission to the Moon. So here is an idea. Maybe we  
20 can put a stake in the ground and say we can identify  
21 disease signatures for the most important diseases by  
22 the year 2020. The number is obviously subject to

1 debate, but these are the kinds of things that we  
2 would have to do and hopefully will enable some new  
3 approaches and a better way of looking at diseases and  
4 keeping people healthy.

5           What do we hope to learn? We have some  
6 pretty lofty goals here, but I think without new  
7 technology it is not going to happen.

8           One thing I can say is, when I came to NIST  
9 I was pretty ignorant of all this. I hope that the  
10 presentations today really helped you get an  
11 appreciation for what my colleagues do. I am amongst  
12 egghead scientists who focus on the nitty-gritty, nuts  
13 and bolts of measurement, and I think that that is why  
14 we are here. I appreciate your attention.

15           DR. TEUTSCH: Thanks, Mike.

16           [Applause.]

17           DR. TEUTSCH: Thanks to all of our speakers.  
18 We have obviously had a tour from the importance of  
19 getting measurement accurately to what the future  
20 world might look like.

21           We have just a few minutes, and I think we  
22 should take this opportunity to ask questions of any

1 of our speakers who are still here or to have a  
2 discussion among ourselves. Let me open the floor for  
3 a couple of questions.

4 **Discussion**

5 DR. TEUTSCH: Let me ask you, do you have  
6 any additional comments that you would like to make  
7 from the CDC perspective?

8 DR. KALMAN: We think that having reference  
9 material is really key to assuring the quality of  
10 these tests not only for the day-to-day QC of the  
11 tests but also for proficiency testing, which is a big  
12 deal. It was quite a large part of the Oversight  
13 report that this group did a few months back.

14 We did a count. I think there are about six  
15 different diseases for which there are higher-order  
16 reference materials either from NIST or FDA or  
17 something like that. We count six. On the Gene Test  
18 website, there are over 1,300 genetic tests currently  
19 available. That is a really small fraction of the  
20 current tests that are available.

21 So the CDC, through the GeTRM program, is  
22 trying to address this gap by just simply organizing a

1 volunteer effort among the people in the genetic  
2 community. We are just characterizing publicly  
3 available cell lines and DNA from the Coriell  
4 repository so that we have a larger supply of  
5 materials so that we can feel confident in knowing the  
6 genotype of these and so labs can use them for  
7 quality control and also the proficiency testing  
8 needs.

9           Right now the projects that we are working  
10 on are pretty much all being driven by requests from  
11 CAP for proficiency testing materials. We are  
12 starting a real large project for pharmacogenetic  
13 materials. We are going to do over 100 DNA samples  
14 for five pharmacogenetic loci. We are going to get  
15 other data from other labs as well on other loci. We  
16 are going to try to do a project for array CGH.

17           We were trying to do a project for Duchenne  
18 muscular dystrophy, which is something that CAP asked  
19 me to work on, but all the labs are stopping their  
20 testing because of the patent issue. So I don't know  
21 what is going to happen.

22           DR. TEUTSCH: Coming full circle. Andrea.

1 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: I want to thank Lisa  
2 for a tremendous effort and the role that she has  
3 played at CDC in getting the GeTRM program started and  
4 being one of the strongest advocates for this. I  
5 think she needs a round of applause from all of us.

6 [Applause.]

7 DR. FERREIRA-GONZALEZ: That said, like you  
8 said, there is a lot more work that needs to be done.  
9 But I think it is interesting that you have already  
10 identified through the collaboration with professional  
11 organizations or end users of different laboratories  
12 what are the current needs of the laboratory not only  
13 in proficiency testing but also reference materials  
14 that we can use to analytically validate the assays  
15 and continue quality control.

16 I was wondering, what is the level of  
17 cooperation between the GeTRM program and the NIST  
18 genomic program. I think a lot of the work that you  
19 have done in identifying some of the needs can be  
20 translated and the deployment of the work NIST can  
21 take over.

22 DR. KALMAN: I do talk to NIST on a regular

1 basis. Our program has a yearly advisory committee  
2 meeting. We always have a few people from NIST at our  
3 meeting, so I talk to them. Also, in the area of  
4 molecular oncology there are a few people from NIST  
5 that I have been talking to.

6 So, yes, I try to keep the communication  
7 lines open. But if you want to talk some more, that  
8 would be great.

9 DR. BUTLER: Margaret Klein went to the  
10 meeting that you had last month. We are looking  
11 forward to working more with you in the future as we  
12 get more into future genetic tests.

13 DR. TEUTSCH: Marc.

14 DR. WILLIAMS: I was going to ask Andrea's  
15 question. But then as Mike spoke, I said, if that is  
16 the vision of where things are going, then in some  
17 sense is investing a lot in genomic validated samples  
18 really worth it if we are really going there.

19 I guess the question that I have -- and  
20 probably you or Dr. May would be the best ones to  
21 address it -- would be, what is your real vision about  
22 where you are going to need to invest your limited

1 funds in terms of standards in the biomedical realm?  
2 Is it going to focus on genomics? Is it going to  
3 focus on proteomics or metabolomics? Are you going to  
4 try and do it all?

5 DR. MAY: I think, in the short term, Mike's  
6 vision is 2020. We have a lot of living to do between  
7 now and then.

8 Certainly, in the short term, the focus of  
9 the NIST's new activities is going to be on medical  
10 imaging and protein measurement science, for sure.  
11 Beyond that, we might do some other things.

12 If you are looking at the near future, I  
13 think for the next two to five years the emphasis is  
14 going to be on improving our capabilities to support  
15 medical imaging and developing more core competencies  
16 in protein measurement science.

17 That would address lots of things. It would  
18 address this disease signature issue that Mike talked  
19 about, as well as the issue of follow-on biologies.

20 So we are trying to increase our core  
21 competencies and put more tools in the toolkit to  
22 address a number of things. Now, in the longer term,

1 we are still going to continue our work in genetics.  
2 We are not going to stop those things. But if you  
3 look for areas that across all of NIST we are going to  
4 expand in, it would be those two.

5           Now, putting on my director of the Chemical  
6 Science and Technology Laboratory hat, certainly in  
7 the Biochemical Science Division there is going to be  
8 a greater emphasis on genetic testing and DNA-based  
9 diagnostics. As John mentioned to you, we have just  
10 done some reorganization within our Biochemical  
11 Science Division to address just that issue.

12           DR. WILLIAMS: In follow-up to that, our  
13 Oversight report identified, as Andrea pointed out,  
14 that this PT issue and having samples is a huge issue.  
15 We have 5,000, plus or minus, genetic tests that are  
16 out there and a small fraction of those actually have  
17 PT materials that are available and in use.

18           From what I'm hearing you say, I think it  
19 may be unrealistic to expect that NIST is going to be  
20 the savior riding in on the stallion at this point.

21           DR. MAY: That is true. But certainly, if  
22 that is a major issue that your Committee has

1 identified, sending a note to me to that effect,  
2 perhaps with a copy to the acting NIST director, would  
3 not be a bad idea.

4 DR. AMOS: Marc, just let me say one thing.

5 It is clear that genomics is going to be an integral  
6 part of the disease signature. I think that the  
7 discovering technologies of the future are really  
8 going to focus on the ability to understand the  
9 environmental effect on the genome. So you have to  
10 have good genomic data to do that. There are all  
11 sorts of issues with the sequencing things that are  
12 going forward.

13 I think my colleagues have decided that  
14 genome-wide association studies are something that we  
15 don't want to do. We are looking at next-generation  
16 sequencing. I will put it that way.

17 DR. TEUTSCH: Mara, you get the last word.

18 DR. ASPINALL: I think I also, once again,  
19 agree with where Marc is going. So this has truly  
20 been a red-letter day.

21 DR. TEUTSCH: It is a great place to end the  
22 meeting.

1 DR. WILLIAMS: She is going to hit me up for  
2 a drink later.

3 [Laughter.]

4 DR. ASPINALL: The question really, Steve,  
5 was to you. I think this was a great session, with  
6 the ability to hear the different perspectives of what  
7 is happening today and getting the various approaches  
8 to that. What role do you see SACGHS taking? This is  
9 great information, but I know that tomorrow we are  
10 going to jump into priorities going forward. Where do  
11 you see this going?

12 I love the idea of taking some action and  
13 sending some letters to NIST. As Marc said, this is,  
14 to me, entirely consistent with the recommendations  
15 not just in the last report but in the last two that  
16 talk about gaps and the need for essentially standard-  
17 setting or ensuring quality across the system. Now we  
18 have an opportunity that doesn't require potentially  
19 major changes in legislation by Congress or otherwise  
20 but just a prioritization. I would vote for taking  
21 some action to at least enforce that.

22 **Closing Remarks**

1                   **Steven Teutsch, M.D., M.P.H.**

2                   DR. TEUTSCH: Letters we can certainly  
3 write. I think that we did get a lot of reinforcement  
4 for some of the things that we have said in the  
5 Oversight report and the importance of measurement  
6 going forward.

7                   I think there are some follow-up things we  
8 can clearly do, because we need to monitor the  
9 implementation of that, and take some steps there.

10                  I think in terms of our prioritization of  
11 what we need to do, we can have some of that  
12 discussion tomorrow. In terms of both short-term and  
13 longer-term actions, it has come up in various places  
14 in the prioritization process. So we should talk  
15 about that. It is not what I will do, it is what we  
16 will do.

17                  So I think that we should think about what  
18 can be done. Certainly, letters of support are  
19 important, but we have a lot in that Oversight report  
20 as well as the PGX report that we don't want to have  
21 sit on paper. We need to move forward.

22                  DR. MAY: A quick comment and an invitation.

1 NIST is going to have a new director in the next six  
2 months or so. Bioscience and health has been  
3 identified as a priority. I'm fairly sure the new  
4 director will honor that.

5           Having said that bioscience and health has  
6 been identified as a priority, right now we are  
7 looking at protein measurement science and medical  
8 imaging as being major thrusts. That doesn't mean we  
9 aren't going to do other things. So I would certainly  
10 extend an invitation for you to have your next meeting  
11 at our campus, if you would like. We have nice  
12 meeting facilities. It is not as convenient to the  
13 airports as down here, but the Metro does run out  
14 there in the hinterlands.

15           So I would invite you to perhaps meet there.

16 I don't know whether we will have a new director, but  
17 certainly we can have you speak with the leadership  
18 and perhaps you can help to influence some of our  
19 future directions.

20           DR. TEUTSCH: Great. Thanks again to all  
21 our speakers.

22           I want to remind all of you who may not be

1 aware of it, in follow-up to the discussion we just  
2 had, the Second International Workshop on Clinical  
3 Cytogenetic Arrays is actually going to be a couple of  
4 weeks from now, December 15th and 16th at the Natcher  
5 Center on the NIH campus.

6           The goal of that workshop is to continue  
7 discussions on standardization of quality control in  
8 cytogenetic array and clinical application design,  
9 resolution interpretation, and a central database for  
10 clinical and research purposes. There is a website  
11 for those of you who might be interested in getting  
12 more information.

13           In bringing this session to a close, first  
14 of all, in addition to thanking all our speakers for  
15 the presentations this afternoon, I want to again  
16 express my gratitude to Jim and to the staff and  
17 everyone who worked so hard on the patents. We came a  
18 long way. We have a long way to go to get to  
19 agreement on what we are planning to recommend, but it  
20 will be great to get that out for comment. So,  
21 thanks, Jim, for your leadership on all of that.

22           There is a bus, for those of you headed back



CERTIFICATION

This is to certify that the attached proceedings

BEFORE THE: **Secretary's Advisory Committee  
on Genetics, Health, and Society  
(SACGHS)**

HELD: **December 1-2, 2008**

were convened as herein appears, and that this is the official transcript thereof for the file of the Department or Commission.

SONIA GONZALEZ, Court Reporter